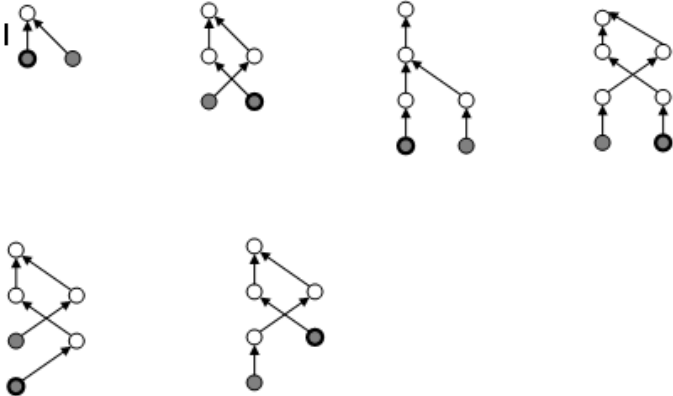

Volume 2
INSTRUCTION MANUAL

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Page iv Add Substitute phrase	Table of contents 4.2.2 Interpretation of “highly improbable” <u>Accepted and rejected sequences for the selection of underlying cause of death for mortality statistics</u>	MRG 1130	October 2007	Minor	January 2010
Page vi Add contents reference to new section in Volume 2	5a. Recommendations 138a	MRG 0113	October 2002	Major	January 2006
Page 23 Revise text	3.1.3 Two codes for certain conditions <i>The “dagger and asterisk” system</i> While the dagger and asterisk system provides alternative classifications for the presentation of statistics, it is a principle of the ICD that the dagger code is the primary code and must always be used. Provision should be made for the asterisk code to be used in addition if the alternative method of presentation may also be required. For coding, the asterisk code must never be used alone. <u>However, for morbidity coding, the dagger and asterisk sequence may be reversed when the manifestation of a disease is the primary focus of care.</u> Statistics incorporating the dagger codes conform with the traditional classification for presenting data on mortality and morbidity and other aspects of medical care.	MbRG 1237	January 2008	Major	January 2010
Revise text: page 25	3.1.3 Two codes for certain conditions (iii) If neither the symbol nor the alternative code appears in the title, the rubric as a whole is not subject to dual classification but individual inclusion terms may be; if so, these terms will be marked with the symbol and their alternative codes given, e.g. A54.8 Other gonococcal infections Gonococcal: ... • peritonitis† (K67.1*) • pneumonia† (J17.0*) • <u>septicaemia sepsis</u>	MbRG 1238	October 2007	Major	January 2010

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	• skin lesions				
Modify p. 30 Revise code	3.1.4 Conventions used in the tabular list <i>“Not elsewhere classified”</i> The words “not elsewhere classified”, when used in a three-character category title, serve as a warning that certain specified variants of the listed conditions may appear in other parts of the classification. For example: J16 Pneumonia due to other infectious organisms, not elsewhere classified This category includes J16.0 Chlamydial pneumonia and J16.8 Pneumonia due to other specified infectious organisms. Many other categories are provided in Chapter X (for example, J09-J10-J15) and other chapters (for example, P23.- Congenital pneumonia) for pneumonias due to specified infectious organisms. J18 Pneumonia, organism unspecified, accommodates pneumonias for which the infectious agent is not stated.	URC (Proposed and ratified at meeting in Tokyo Oct’05)	October 2005	Major	October 2005
Page 26 Revise code	3.1.5 Categories with common characteristics <i>Categories limited to one sex</i> The following categories apply only to females: A34, B37.3...Z32-36, <u>Z39.-</u> , Z43.7, Z87.5, Z97.5.	WHO	October 1997		January 1999
Page 32 Add text	4.1.3 International form of medical certificate of cause of death ... Part I of the form is for diseases related to the train of events leading directly to death, and Part II is for unrelated but contributory conditions. <u>The medical practitioner or other qualified certifier should use his or her clinical judgment in completing the medical certificate of cause of death. Automated systems must not include lists or other prompts to guide the certifier as these necessarily limit the range of diagnoses and therefore have an adverse effect on the accuracy and usefulness of the report.</u>	MRG 0106	October 2001	Major	January 2003
Page 36 Add text	4.1.4 Procedures for selection of the underlying cause of death for mortality tabulation When only one cause of death is reported, this cause is used for tabulation <u>by</u>	MRG 1498	October 2010	Minor	January 2012

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<u>application of the one cause rule.</u>				
Revise text	<p>4.1.4 Procedures for selection of the underlying cause of death for mortality tabulation</p> <p>...</p> <p>The next step therefore is to determine whether one or more of the modification rules A to DF (see section....</p>	MRG 1797	October 2011	Minor	January 2013
Insert a paragraph	<p>4.1.5 Rules for selection of the originating antecedent cause Sequence</p> <p>• Hypertension (leading to) cerebrovascular accident (leading to) coma;</p> <p><u>If the death certificate has more than one sequence it is important to identify the originating cause of the first mentioned sequence. Otherwise, the selection and modification rules cannot be applied properly and the underlying cause will not be correctly selected.</u></p> <p><u>To identify the originating cause of the first mentioned sequence, begin with the direct cause of death (the first mentioned condition on the highest used line in Part I). Establish whether the first condition listed on the next line in Part I can cause the direct cause of death. If it cannot, establish if the second condition listed on this line can cause the direct cause of death. Continue until a condition has been found that could cause the direct cause of death. This condition is referred to in the following as the “temporary originating cause”. If no condition is found that can cause the direct cause of death, there is no sequence ending with the direct cause of death.</u></p> <p><u>If a temporary originating cause has been found but there are conditions reported on lower lines in Part I, repeat the procedure for the next line. Now start with the temporary originating cause identified in the previous step. Establish whether the first condition listed on the next lower line in Part I can cause the temporary originating cause. If it cannot, establish if the second condition listed on that line can cause the temporary originating cause.</u></p>	MRG 1472	October 2010	Minor	January 2012
Add text					

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p><u>Continue until a condition has been found that could cause the temporary originating cause. This is the new temporary originating cause.</u></p> <p><u>If a new temporary originating cause has been found but there are still conditions reported on lower lines in Part I, repeat the procedure for as long as a new temporary originating cause can be identified. When no condition can be found that could cause the temporary originating cause, the last identified temporary originating cause is also the originating cause of the first mentioned sequence.</u></p> <p><u>The following illustrate examples of competing sequences. The underlying cause of the first mentioned sequence is in grey with a bold black circle.</u></p> 				
Page 35 Add Add Add	<p>4.1.6 Some considerations on selection rules</p> <p><i>Example 5:</i> I (a) Generalized metastases <u>5 weeks</u> (b) Bronchopneumonia <u>3 days</u> (c) Lung cancer <u>11 months</u></p>	MRG 0104	October 2001	Minor	January 2003
	4.1.7 Examples of the General Principle and selection rules	Australia 0301	October 2005	Major	January 2010

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Revise code	<p>General Principle</p> <p>When more than one condition is entered on the certificate, select the condition entered alone on the lowest used line of Part I only if it could have given rise to all the conditions entered above it.</p> <p><i>Example 8:</i> I (a) Cerebral haemorrhage (b) Hypertension (c) Chronic pyelonephritis (d) Prostatic adenoma</p> <p> Select prostatic adenoma (N40D29.1).</p>				
Page 39 Change existing text as indicated	<p>4.1.7 Examples of the General Principle and selection rules</p> <p>Rule 3</p> <p>...</p> <p><i>Assumed direct consequences of another condition</i></p> <p>Any disease <u>Diseases</u> described or qualified as "embolic" may be assumed to be a direct consequence of venous thrombosis, phlebitis or thrombophlebitis, valvular heart disease, atrial fibrillation, childbirth and <u>or any</u> operation. <u>However, there must be a clear route from the place where the thrombus formed and the place of the embolism. Thus, venous thrombosis or thrombophlebitis may cause pulmonary embolism. Thrombi that form in the left side of the heart (for example on mitral or aortic valves), or are due to atrial fibrillations, may cause embolism to the arteries of the body circulation. Similarly, thrombi that form around the right side heart valves (tricuspid and pulmonary valves) may give rise to embolism in the pulmonary arteries. Also, thrombi that form in the left side of the heart could pass to the right side if a cardiac septal defect is present.</u></p> <p>Note: Then follows new text from URC:0188 (see below)</p>	MRG 0156	October 2003	Minor	January 2005
Page 39 Add text	<p>4.1.7 Examples of the General Principle and selection rules</p> <p>Rule 3</p> <p>...</p> <p><i>Assumed direct consequences of another condition</i></p>	MRG 0175	October 2003	Minor	January 2005

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p>Any disease described or qualified as “embolic” may be assumed...</p> <p><u>Dementia, without a mention of specified cause, should be considered a consequence of conditions that typically involve irreversible brain damage. However, when a specified cause is given, only a condition that may lead to irreversible brain damage should be accepted as cause of the dementia, even if irreversible brain damage is not a typical feature of the condition.</u></p> <p>Any disease described as secondary should be assumed to be...</p>				
Page 39 Add text	<p>4.1.7 Examples of the General Principle and selection rules</p> <p>Rule 3</p> <p>...</p> <p><i>Assumed direct consequences of another condition</i></p> <p>Secondary or unspecified anaemia, malnutrition, marasmus or cachexia may be assumed to be a consequence of any malignant neoplasm, <u>paralytic disease, or disease which limits the ability to care for oneself, including dementia and degenerative diseases of the nervous system.</u></p>	MRG 0169	October 2003	Minor	January 2005
Page 39 Delete text Add text	<p>4.1.7 Examples of the General Principle and selection rules</p> <p>Rule 3</p> <p>...</p> <p><i>Assumed direct consequences of another condition</i></p> <p>Any disease described or qualified as “embolic” may be assumed to be a direct consequence of venous thrombosis, phlebitis or thrombophlebitis, valvular heart disease, atrial fibrillation, childbirth or any operation.</p> <p><u>Also, thrombi that form in the left side of the heart could pass to the right side if a cardiac septal defect is present. (From URC:0156, see above)</u></p> <p><u>Arterial embolism in the systemic circulation should be considered an obvious consequence of atrial fibrillation. When pulmonary embolism is reported due to atrial fibrillation, the sequence should be accepted. However, pulmonary</u></p>	MRG 0188	October 2003	Minor	January 2005

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p><u>embolism should not be considered an obvious consequence of atrial fibrillation.</u></p> <p>Any disease described as secondary should be assumed to be a direct consequence of the most probable primary cause entered on the certificate.</p>				
<p>Page 39</p> <p>Replace existing 4th paragraph with this revised rule</p>	<p>4.1.7 Examples of the General Principle and selection rules</p> <p>Rule 3</p> <p>...</p> <p><i>Assumed direct consequences of another condition</i></p> <p><i>Assumed direct consequences of another condition</i></p> <p><u>Any pneumonia in J12-J18 should be considered an obvious consequence of conditions that impair the immune system. Pneumonia in J18.0 and J18.2-J18.9 should be considered an obvious consequence of wasting diseases (such as malignant neoplasm and malnutrition) and diseases causing paralysis (such as cerebral haemorrhage or thrombosis), as well as serious respiratory conditions, communicable diseases, and serious injuries. Pneumonia in J18.0 and J18.2-J18.9, J69.0, and J69.8 should also be considered an obvious consequence of conditions that affect the process of swallowing. Note: A list of conditions is available from the World Health Organization.</u></p>	MRG 0047	October 2000	Major	January 2003
<p>Page 39</p> <p>Add text</p>	<p>4.1.7 Examples of the General Principle and selection rules</p> <p>Rule 3</p> <p>...</p> <p><i>Assumed direct consequences of another condition</i></p> <p><u>Lobar pneumonia, unspecified (J18.1) should be considered an obvious consequence of dependence syndrome due to use of alcohol (F10.2). Any pneumonia in J12-J18 should be considered an obvious consequence of conditions that impair the immune system. Pneumonia in J18.0 and J18.2-J18.9 should be considered an obvious consequence of wasting diseases (such as malignant neoplasm and malnutrition) and diseases causing paralysis (such as cerebral haemorrhage or thrombosis), as well as serious respiratory</u></p>	MRG 0213	October 2004	Major	January 2006

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	conditions, communicable diseases, and serious injuries. Pneumonia in J18.0 and J18.2-J18.9, J69.0, and J69.8 should also be considered an obvious consequence of conditions that affect the process of swallowing. Note: A list of conditions is available from the World Health Organization.				
Volume 2, p. 39 (including sentence added in 2004 MRG recommendation concerning alcohol dependence)	<p>4.1.7 Examples of the General Principle and selection rules</p> <p>Rule 3</p> <p>...</p> <p><i>Assumed direct consequences of another condition</i></p> <p>Lobar pneumonia, unspecified (J18.1) should be considered an obvious consequence of alcohol dependence (F10.2). Any pneumonia in J12-J18 should be considered an obvious consequence of conditions that impair the immune system. Pneumonia in J18.0 and J18.2-J18.9 should be considered an obvious consequence of wasting diseases (such as malignant neoplasm and malnutrition) and diseases causing paralysis (such as cerebral haemorrhage or thrombosis), as well as serious respiratory conditions, communicable diseases, and serious injuries. Pneumonia in J18.0 and J18.2-J18.9, J69.0, and J69.8 should also be considered an obvious consequence of conditions that affect the process of swallowing. <u>Other common secondary conditions (such as pulmonary embolism, decubitus ulcer, and cystitis) should be considered an obvious consequence of wasting diseases (such as malignant neoplasm and malnutrition) and diseases causing paralysis (such as cerebral haemorrhage or thrombosis) as well as communicable diseases, and serious injuries. However, such secondary conditions should not be considered an obvious consequence of respiratory conditions.</u> Note: A list of conditions is available from the World Health Organization.</p> <p>The table below would then follow:</p>	MRG 0256	October 2004	Minor	January 2006
Conditions in the following categories should be considered obvious consequences of the conditions listed in the ‘wasting and paralyzing diseases’ list. Conditions in categories flagged with an ‘M’ (Maybe) should be considered obvious consequences of the conditions listed in the ‘wasting and paralyzing diseases’ list only if they meet the prerequisite for code assignment noted in the final column of the table.					
Code(s)	Description	Conditional Response	Qualifier		

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction		Instruction manual entries		Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
<u>I26.0- I26.9</u>	<u>Pulmonary embolism</u>						
<u>I74.2-I74.4</u>	<u>Arterial embolism and thrombosis of extremities</u>						
<u>I80.1-I80.3</u>	<u>Phlebitis and thrombophlebitis of lower extremities</u>						
<u>I80.9</u>	<u>Phlebitis and thrombophlebitis of unspecified site</u>						
<u>I82.9</u>	<u>Embolism and thrombosis of unspecified vein</u>						
<u>K55.0</u>	<u>Acute vascular disorder of intestine</u>	<u>M</u>	<u>The condition in K55.0 must be specified as an embolism</u>				
<u>K56.4</u>	<u>Other impaction of intestine</u>						
<u>K59.0</u>	<u>Constipation</u>						
<u>L89</u>	<u>Decubitus ulcer</u>						
<u>N10-N12</u>	<u>Tubulo-interstitial nephritis</u>	<u>M</u>	<u>Diseases causing paralysis or inability to control bladder</u>				
<u>N28.0</u>	<u>Ischaemia and infarction of kidney</u>	<u>M</u>	<u>The condition in N28.0 must be specified as an embolism of the renal artery</u>				
<u>N30.0-N30.2</u>	<u>Cystitis, acute, interstitial and other chronic</u>	<u>M</u>	<u>Diseases causing paralysis or inability to control bladder</u>				
<u>N30.9</u>	<u>Cystitis, unspecified</u>	<u>M</u>	<u>Diseases causing paralysis or inability to control bladder</u>				
<u>N31</u>	<u>Neuromuscular dysfunction of bladder, not elsewhere classified</u>						
<u>N34.0-N34.2</u>	<u>Urethritis</u>	<u>M</u>	<u>Diseases causing paralysis or inability to control bladder</u>				
<u>N35.1-N35.9</u>	<u>Urethral stricture</u>	<u>M</u>	<u>Diseases causing paralysis or inability to control bladder</u>				
<u>N39.0</u>	<u>Urinary tract infection , site not specified</u>	<u>M</u>	<u>Diseases causing paralysis or inability to control bladder</u>				
p. 39	Certain postoperative complications (pneumonia (any type), haemorrhage...			MRG 0348	October 2005	Minor	January 2007
Add text	<u>Heart failure (I50.-) and unspecified heart disease (I51.9) should be considered an obvious consequence of other heart conditions.</u>						

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p>Pulmonary edema (J81) should be considered an obvious consequence of heart disease (including pulmonary heart disease); of conditions affecting the lung parenchyma, such as lung infections, aspiration and inhalation, respiratory distress syndrome, high altitude, and circulating toxins; of conditions causing fluid overload, such as renal failure and hypoalbuminemia; and of congenital anomalies affecting the pulmonary circulation, such as congenital stenosis of pulmonary veins. Note: a list of conditions can be obtained from the WHO Web site.</p> <p>Lobar pneumonia, unspecified (J18.1) should be considered an obvious consequence of dependence syndrome due to use of alcohol (F10.2). Any pneumonia in J12-J18 should be considered an obvious consequence of conditions that impair the immune system....</p>				
p. 39 Add text	<p>4.1.7 Examples of the General Principle and selection rules</p> <p>Rule 3</p> <p>...</p> <p><i>Assumed direct consequences of another condition</i></p> <p>Any pneumonia in J12-J18 should be considered an obvious consequence of conditions that impair the immune system. Pneumonia in <u>J15.0-15.6, J15.8-J15.9, J16.8, J18.0 and J18.2-J18.9</u> should be considered an obvious consequence of wasting diseases (such as malignant neoplasm and malnutrition) and diseases causing paralysis (such as cerebral haemorrhage or thrombosis), as well as serious respiratory conditions, communicable diseases, and serious injuries. Pneumonia in <u>J15.0-15.6, J15.8-J15.9, J16.8, J18.0, J18.2-J18.9, J69.0, and J69.8</u> should also be considered an obvious consequence of conditions that affect the process of swallowing.</p>	MRG 0347	October 2005	Minor	January 2007
Page 40 Add text	<p>4.1.7 Examples of the General Principle and selection rules</p> <p>Rule 3</p> <p>...</p> <p><i>Assumed direct consequences of another condition</i></p> <p>Nephritic syndrome may be assumed to be a consequence of any streptococcal infection (scarlet fever, streptococcal sore throat, etc). <u>Acute renal failure should be assumed as an obvious consequence of a urinary tract infection, provided that there is no indication that the renal failure was present before the urinary tract infection.</u></p>	MRG 0189	October 2003	Minor	January 2005

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Page 40 Add text	<p>4.1.7 Examples of the General Principle and selection rules</p> <p>Rule 3</p> <p>...</p> <p><i>Assumed direct consequences of another condition</i></p> <p>An operation on a given organ should be considered a direct consequence of any surgical condition (such as malignant tumour or injury) of the same organ reported anywhere on the certificate.</p> <p><u>Haemorrhage should be considered an obvious consequence of anticoagulant poisoning or overdose. However, haemorrhage should not be considered an obvious consequence of anticoagulant therapy without mention of poisoning or overdose.</u></p>	MRG 0262	October 2004	Minor	January 2006
Page 42 Revise text:	<p>4.1.7 Examples of the General Principle and selection rules</p> <p>Rule 3</p> <p>...</p> <p><i>Assumed direct consequences of another condition</i></p> <p>Certain postoperative complications (pneumonia (any type), haemorrhage, thrombophlebitis, embolism, thrombosis, septicaemia-sepsis, cardiac arrest, renal failure (acute), aspiration, atelectasis and infarction) should be considered direct consequences of an operation, unless surgery was carried out four weeks or more before death.</p>	MbRG 1238	October 2007	Major	January 2010
Page 43 Add text:	<p>4.1.7 Examples of the General Principle and selection rules</p> <p>Rule 3</p> <p>...</p> <p><i>Assumed direct consequences of another condition</i></p> <p>Dehydration may be <u>should be considered assumed to be a</u> <u>an obvious</u> consequence of any intestinal infectious disease.</p> <p><u>Primary atelectasis of newborn (P28.0) should be considered an obvious consequence of congenital kidney conditions (Q60, Q61.0-Q61.1, Q61.3-Q61.9, Q62.1, Q62.3, Q62.4).</u></p>	MRG 1122	October 2007	Minor	January 2009

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p><u>premature rupture of membranes (P01.1), and oligohydramnios (P01.2).</u></p> <p><u>Fetus and newborn affected by premature rupture of membranes or oligohydramnios (P01.1-P01.2) should be assumed to be a direct consequence of congenital kidney conditions (Q60, Q61.0-Q61.1, Q61.3-Q61.9, Q62.1, Q62.3, Q62.4).</u></p>				
Page 43 Add text:	<p>4.1.7 Examples of the General Principle and selection rules</p> <p>Rule 3</p> <p>...</p> <p><i>Assumed direct consequences of another condition</i></p> <p><u>Acidosis (E87.2); Other specified metabolic disorders (E88.8); Other mononeuropathies (G58.-); Polyneuropathy, unspecified (G62.9); Other disorders of peripheral nervous system (G64); amyotrophy not otherwise specified in Other primary disorders of muscles (G71.8), Disorder of autonomic nervous system, unspecified (G90.9), and Neuralgia and neuritis, unspecified (M79.2); Iridocyclitis (H20.9); Cataract, unspecified (H26.9); Choriorretinal inflammation, unspecified (H30.9); Retinal vascular occlusions (H34); Background retinopathy and retinal vascular changes (H35.0); Other proliferative retinopathy (H35.2); Retinal haemorrhage (H35.6); Retinal disorder, unspecified (H35.9); Peripheral vascular disease, unspecified (I73.9); Atherosclerosis of arteries of extremities (I70.2); Arthritis, unspecified (M13.9); Nephrotic syndrome (N03- N05); End-stage renal disease (N18.0); Chronic renal failure, Chronic kidney disease, unspecified (N18.9 N18.-)); Unspecified renal kidney failure (N19); Unspecified contracted kidney (N26); renal disease in Disorder of kidney and ureter, unspecified (N28.9) and Persistent proteinuria, unspecified (N39.1); Gangrene, not elsewhere classified (R02); Coma, unspecified (R40.2); and <u>Other specified abnormal findings of blood chemistry (R79.8) for acetonemia, azotemia, and related conditions should be considered an obvious consequence of Diabetes mellitus (E10-E14).</u></u></p>	MRG 1142	October 2007	Major	January 2010
Added codes to table	<p>4.1.7 Examples of the General Principle and selection rules</p> <p>Rule 3</p> <p>...</p> <p><i>Assumed direct consequences of another condition</i></p> <p>Conditions in the following categories should be considered obvious consequences of the conditions listed in the “wasting and paralyzing diseases” list. Conditions in categories</p>	MRG 1127	October 2007	Minor	January 2009

Instruction	Instruction manual entries			Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	flagged with an ‘M’ (Maybe) should be considered obvious consequences of the conditions listed in the “wasting and paralyzing diseases” list only if they meet the prerequisite for code assignment noted in the final column of the table.						
	Code(s)	Description	Conditional Response	Qualifier			
	E86	<u>Volume depletion</u>					
	G81-G83	<u>Other paralytic syndromes</u>					
	I26.0-I26.9	<u>Pulmonary embolism</u>					
	I74.2-I74.4	<u>Arterial embolism and thrombosis of extremities</u>					
	I80.1-I80.3	<u>Phlebitis and thrombophlebitis of lower extremities</u>					
	I80.9	<u>Phlebitis and thrombophlebitis of unspecified site</u>					
	I82.9	<u>Embolism and thrombosis of unspecified vein</u>					
	K55.0	<u>Acute vascular disorder of intestine</u>	M	The condition in K55.0 must be specified as an embolism			
	K56.4	<u>Other impaction of intestine</u>					
	K59.0	<u>Constipation</u>					
	L89	<u>Decubitus ulcer</u>					
	N10-N12	<u>Tubulo-interstitial nephritis</u>	M	Diseases causing paralysis or inability to control bladder			
	N17, N19	<u>Renal failure. Kidney disease, acute or unspecified</u>					
	N28.0	<u>Ischaemia and</u>	M	The condition in N28.0 must			

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction	Instruction manual entries				Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date																												
	<table><tr><td></td><td>infarction of kidney</td><td></td><td>be specified as an embolism of the renal artery</td></tr><tr><td>N30.0-N30.2</td><td>Cystitis, acute, interstitial and other chronic</td><td>M</td><td>Diseases causing paralysis or inability to control bladder</td></tr><tr><td>N30.9</td><td>Cystitis, unspecified</td><td>M</td><td>Diseases causing paralysis or inability to control bladder</td></tr><tr><td>N31</td><td>Neuromuscular dysfunction of bladder, not elsewhere classified</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>N34.0-N34.2</td><td>Urethritis</td><td>M</td><td>Diseases causing paralysis or inability to control bladder</td></tr><tr><td>N35.1-N35.9</td><td>Urethral stricture (non-traumatic)</td><td>M</td><td>Diseases causing paralysis or inability to control bladder</td></tr><tr><td>N39.0</td><td>Urinary tract infection, site not specified</td><td>M</td><td>Diseases causing paralysis or inability to control bladder</td></tr></table>					infarction of kidney		be specified as an embolism of the renal artery	N30.0-N30.2	Cystitis, acute, interstitial and other chronic	M	Diseases causing paralysis or inability to control bladder	N30.9	Cystitis, unspecified	M	Diseases causing paralysis or inability to control bladder	N31	Neuromuscular dysfunction of bladder, not elsewhere classified			N34.0-N34.2	Urethritis	M	Diseases causing paralysis or inability to control bladder	N35.1-N35.9	Urethral stricture (non-traumatic)	M	Diseases causing paralysis or inability to control bladder	N39.0	Urinary tract infection, site not specified	M	Diseases causing paralysis or inability to control bladder				
	infarction of kidney		be specified as an embolism of the renal artery																																	
N30.0-N30.2	Cystitis, acute, interstitial and other chronic	M	Diseases causing paralysis or inability to control bladder																																	
N30.9	Cystitis, unspecified	M	Diseases causing paralysis or inability to control bladder																																	
N31	Neuromuscular dysfunction of bladder, not elsewhere classified																																			
N34.0-N34.2	Urethritis	M	Diseases causing paralysis or inability to control bladder																																	
N35.1-N35.9	Urethral stricture (non-traumatic)	M	Diseases causing paralysis or inability to control bladder																																	
N39.0	Urinary tract infection, site not specified	M	Diseases causing paralysis or inability to control bladder																																	
Page 43	4.1.7 Examples of the General Principle and selection rules Rule 3 ... <i>Assumed direct consequences of another condition</i>				MRG 1249	October 2008	Minor	January 2010																												
Add text	Haemorrhage should be considered an obvious consequence of anticoagulant poisoning or overdose. However, haemorrhage should not be considered an obvious consequence of anticoagulant therapy without mention of poisoning or overdose. <u>Gastric haemorrhage should be considered an obvious consequence of steroid, aspirin, and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs).</u>																																			

[illegible]

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<u>(Birth asphyxia), P35 (Congenital viral diseases), P37 (Other congenital infectious and parasitic diseases), P52 (Intracranial nontraumatic haemorrhage of fetus and newborn), P57 (Kernicterus), P90 (Convulsions of newborn) and P91 (Other disturbances of cerebral status of newborn).]</u>				
Revise text	<p>4.1.7 Examples of the General Principle and selection rules ... Rule 3 ... <i>Assumed direct consequences of another condition</i> ... Any infectious diseases</p> <p>Certain conditions should be considered direct consequences of a medical procedure, if <u>the procedure was carried out within four weeks before death. A list of such complications can be found in Appendix @@.</u></p> <p><u>Appendix @@: List of conditions to be considered direct consequences of medical procedures</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>A condition on the list should be considered a direct consequence of a medical procedure if the procedure was carried out within four weeks before death.</u> • <u>No condition on the list should be considered a direct consequence of a procedure if there is evidence that the condition was present before the procedure was carried out.</u> • <u>A condition flagged with "OCPR" (Other Cause of Procedure Required) should be considered an obvious consequence of a procedure only if another reason for performing the procedure is indicated on the certificate.</u> • <u>A condition flagged with "DSAP" (Duration Stated, developed After Procedure) should be considered an obvious consequence of a medical procedure only if there is clear evidence that the condition developed after the procedure.</u> • <u>Adhesions should be considered an obvious consequence of a procedure in the same site or region, even after more than four weeks. If the procedure was performed more than one year before death, use the codes for sequelae of medical care.</u> 	MRG 1553	October 2009	Minor	January 2011

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p><u>Infections</u></p> <p><u>abscess</u> O CPR</p> <p><u>bacteraemia</u></p> <p><u>fistula</u> O CPR, and</p> <p>for a procedure of the same site</p> <p>or region</p> <p>only</p> <p><u>gas gangrene</u></p> <p><u>infection, haemolytic</u></p> <p><u>infection NOS</u> D SAP</p> <p><u>infection in surgical wound</u></p> <p><u>septicaemia</u></p> <p><u>septic</u></p> <p><u>Haemorrhage, haemolysis</u></p> <p><u>coagulopathy, consumption</u></p> <p><u>DIC (disseminated intravascular coagulation)</u></p> <p><u>haemorrhage NOS</u></p> <p><u>haemorrhage, gastrointestinal</u> O CPR</p> <p><u>haemorrhage, intraabdominal</u> O CPR</p> <p><u>haemorrhage, rectal</u> O CPR</p> <p><u>haemorrhage, surgical wound</u></p> <p><u>haemorrhage, specified site</u> for a procedure of the same site</p> <p>or region</p> <p>only</p> <p><u>haematemesis</u> O CPR</p> <p><u>haematoma</u> O CPR</p> <p><u>haemothorax</u> O CPR</p> <p><u>haemolysis</u></p> <p><u>melaena</u> O CPR</p> <p><u>Cardiac complications</u></p>				

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<u>arrest, cardiac</u> <u>arrhythmia NOS</u> DSAP <u>asystole</u> <u>block, cardiac</u> DSAP <u>failure/insufficiency, cardiac</u> <u>fibrillation, atrial</u> DSAP <u>fibrillation, ventricular</u> <u>infarction (myocardial)</u> <u>ischaemia, myocardial (acute)</u> <u>rupture, myocardial</u> <u>Cerebrovascular and other cerebral complications</u> <u>apoplexy</u> DSAP <u>damage, brain (anoxic)</u> DSAP <u>embolism, cerebral</u> DSAP <u>haemorrhage, cerebral/intracranial</u> DSAP <u>infarction, cerebral</u> DSAP <u>ischaemia, cerebral/cerebrovascular</u> DSAP <u>lesion, cerebral/cerebrovascular</u> DSAP <u>meningitis</u> DSAP <u>oedema, cerebral</u> DSAP <u>stroke</u> DSAP <u>thrombosis, cerebral</u> DSAP <u>Other vascular complications</u> <u>arrest, circulatory</u> <u>embolism (arterial)</u> <u>embolism, fat/air</u> <u>embolism, pulmonary</u> <u>embolism, venous</u> <u>failure/insufficiency, circulatory</u> <u>hypotension</u> <u>infarction, pulmonary</u> <u>infarction (any site)</u> <u>occlusion (any site)</u> <u>phlebitis (any site)</u>				

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p><u>phlebothrombosis (any site)</u></p> <p><u>thrombophlebitis (any site)</u></p> <p><u>thrombosis, arterial</u></p> <p><u>thrombosis, venous</u></p> <p><u>thrombosis NOS (any site)</u></p> <p><u><i>Respiratory complications</i></u></p> <p><u>alkalosis and acidosis, respiratory</u></p> <p><u>ARDS (adult respiratory distress syndrome)</u></p> <p><u>arrest, respiratory</u></p> <p><u>aspiration</u></p> <p><u>atelectasis</u></p> <p><u>bronchitis</u> DSAP</p> <p><u>effusion, pleura</u></p> <p><u>empyema</u> OCPR</p> <p><u>fistula, bronchopleural or oesophageal</u> OCPR</p> <p><u>failure/insufficiency, pulmonary</u></p> <p><u>failure/insufficiency, respiratory</u></p> <p><u>mediastinitis</u></p> <p><u>obstruction, upper airway</u> OCPR</p> <p><u>oedema, laryngeal</u> OCPR</p> <p><u>oedema/hypostasis, pulmonary</u></p> <p><u>pneumonia</u></p> <p><u>pneumothorax</u> OCPR</p> <p><u><i>Gastrointestinal complications</i></u></p> <p><u>abscess, intra-abdominal</u> OCPR</p> <p><u>constipation</u> OCPR</p> <p><u>dilatation, gastric</u> OCPR</p> <p><u>disorder, circulatory, gastrointestinal</u> OCPR</p> <p><u>embolism, mesenterial</u> OCPR</p> <p><u>failure, hepatic</u> DSAP</p> <p><u>fistula, biliary/ bowel/rectovaginal</u> OCPR</p> <p><u>ileus</u> OCPR</p> <p><u>ischaemia, intestinal</u> OCPR</p> <p><u>necrosis, gastrointestinal</u> OCPR</p> <p><u>obstruction, bowel (mechanical)</u> OCPR</p>				

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p><u>peritonitis</u> <u>OCPR</u></p> <p><u>ulcer, gastrointestinal (stress)</u> <u>OCPR</u></p> <p><u>volvulus</u> <u>OCPR</u></p> <p><i>Renal and urinary complications</i></p> <p><u>anuria</u></p> <p><u>failure/insufficiency, renal</u></p> <p><u>fistula, urinary</u> <u>OCPR</u></p> <p><u>infection, urinary</u></p> <p><u>pyelonephritis</u> <u>DSAP</u></p> <p><u>retention, urine</u></p> <p><u>stricture, urethra</u> <u>OCPR</u></p> <p><u>uraemia</u></p> <p><u>urosepsis</u></p> <p><i>Other complications</i></p> <p><u>adhesions</u> <u>for a</u> <u>procedure of</u> <u>the same site</u> <u>or region</u></p> <p><u>only</u></p> <p><u>shock NOS</u></p> <p><u>shock, anaphylactic</u></p> <p><u>"complication(s)" NOS</u></p> <p><u>crisis, thyrotoxic</u> <u>DSAP</u></p> <p><u>displacement, prosthesis</u></p> <p><u>failure, (multi)organ</u></p> <p><u>gangrene</u></p> <p><u>insufficiency, anastomosis</u> <u>OCPR</u></p> <p><u>necrosis, fat/wound</u> <u>OCPR</u></p> <p><u>syndrome, compartment</u> <u>OCPR</u></p> <p><u>seizures (epileptic)</u> <u>DSAP</u></p> <p><u>ulcer, decubitus</u></p>				
Page 39	4.1.7 Examples of the General Principle and selection rules	MRG 1498	October 2010	Minor	January 2012

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Delete text	<p>General Principle ...</p> <p><i>Example 10: I(a) Bronchopneumonia</i> II – Secondary anaemia and chronic lymphatic leukaemia</p> <p>Select bronchopneumonia. But Rule 3 also applies; see Example 26</p>				
Page 43 Add new text between the paragraphs on infectious diseases and certain postoperative conditions	<p>4.1.7 Examples of the General Principle and selection rules ...</p> <p>Rule 3 <u>Enterocolitis due to <i>Clostridium difficile</i> should be assumed to be an obvious consequence of antibiotic therapy.</u></p> <p>Certain postoperative complications....</p>	MRG 1683	October 2010	Minor	January 2012
Revise text	<p>4.1.7 Rule 3</p> <p>Any infectious disease classifiable to A09 B19, B25 B49, B58 B64, B99 or J12 J18 <u>aside from those listed in section 4.2.2 A.(a)</u> should be considered to be a direct consequence of reported HIV disease.</p>	MRG 1769	October 2011	Major	January 2013
Add text	<p>4.1.7 Examples of the General Principle and selection rules ...</p> <p>Rule 3 ...</p> <p>Arterial embolism in the systemic circulation . . . an obvious consequence of atrial fibrillation</p> <p><u>Unspecified dementia (F03) and Alzheimer’s disease (G30.-) should be considered an obvious consequence of Down’s syndrome (Q90.-).</u></p>	MRG 1792	October 2011	Minor	January 2013
	<p>Section 4.1.7 ...</p> <p>Rule 3</p>	MRG 1796	October 2011	Minor	January 2013

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Add text	<p>... Heart failure (I50.-) and unspecified heart disease (I51.9) should be considered an obvious consequence of other heart conditions.</p> <p><u>Oesophageal varices (I85.-) should be considered an obvious consequence of liver diseases classifiable to B18.-, K70.-, K73.-, K74.-, and K76.-.</u></p>				
Revise text	<p>4.1.7 Examples of the General Principle and selection rules</p> <p>Rule 3</p> <p>... <i>Assumed direct consequences of another condition</i></p> <p>Acidosis (E87.2); Other specified metabolic disorders (E88.8); Other mononeuropathies (G58.-); Polyneuropathy, unspecified (G62.9); Other disorders of peripheral nervous system (G64); Myoneural disorder, unspecified (G70.9); Amyotrophy not otherwise specified in Other primary disorders of muscles (G71.8), Disorder of autonomic nervous system, unspecified (G90.9), Iridocyclitis, unspecified (H20.9); Cataract, unspecified (H26.9); Chorioretinal inflammation, unspecified (H30.9); Retinal vascular occlusions (H34); Background retinopathy and retinal vascular changes (H35.0); Other proliferative retinopathy (H35.2); Retinal haemorrhage (H35.6); Retinal disorder, unspecified (H35.9); Paralytic strabismus, unspecified (H49.9); Blindness and low vision (H54); Atherosclerosis of arteries of extremities (I70.2); Peripheral vascular disease, unspecified (I73.9); Angiopathy in Other and unspecified disorders of circulatory system (I99); Dermatitis, unspecified (L30.9); Necrobiosis lipoidica, not elsewhere classified (L92.1); Ulcer of lower limb, not elsewhere classified (L97); Arthritis, unspecified (M13.9); Neuralgia and neuritis, unspecified (M79.2); Disorder of bone, unspecified (M89.9); Nephrotic syndrome (N03- N05); Chronic kidney disease (N18.-); Unspecified kidney failure (N19); Unspecified contracted kidney (N26); Renal disease in Disorder of kidney and ureter, unspecified (N28.9); Urinary tract infection site not specified (N39.0); Persistent proteinuria, unspecified (N39.1); Gangrene, not elsewhere classified (R02); Coma, unspecified (R40.2); and Acetonemia, azotemia, and related conditions in Other specified abnormal findings of blood chemistry (R79.8) should be considered an obvious consequence of Diabetes mellitus (E10-E14).</p>	MRG 1864	October 2011	Minor	January 2013
Revise	<p>4.1.7 Examples of the General Principle and selection rules</p> <p>Rule 3</p>	Korea 1917	October 2012	Minor	January 2014

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
example	<i>Example 25: I (a) Cerebral toxoplasmosis and herpes zoster</i> <i>II (b) Burkitt lymphoma, HIV disease</i>				
Page 42 Add text	4.1.8 Modification of the selected cause Some of the modification rules require further application of the selection rules, which will not be difficult for experienced coders, but it is important to go through the process of selection, modification and, if necessary, reselection. <u>After application of the modification rules, selection Rule 3 should be reapplied.</u>	MRG 0157	October 2003	Minor	January 2005
Page 42 Replace existing paragraph with this revised rule	4.1.9 The modification rules <i>Rule A. Senility and other ill-defined conditions</i> <u>Where the selected cause is ill-defined and a condition classified elsewhere is reported on the certificate, reselect the cause of death as if the ill-defined condition had not been reported, except to take account of that condition if it modifies the coding. The following conditions are regarded as ill-defined: I46.9 (Cardiac arrest, unspecified); I95.9 Hypotension, unspecified); I99 (Other and unspecified disorders of circulatory system); J96.0 (Acute respiratory failure); J96.9 (Respiratory failure, unspecified); P28.5 (Respiratory failure of newborn); R00-R94 or R96-R99 (Symptoms, signs and abnormal clinical and laboratory findings, not elsewhere classified). Note that R95 (Sudden infant death) is not regarded as ill-defined.</u>	MRG (URC:0048 – for addition of P28.5)	October 1999		January 2001

Instruction		Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Modify p. 42, section 4.1.9		<p>4.1.9 The modification rules</p> <p><i>Rule A. Senility and other ill-defined conditions</i></p> <p>Where the selected cause is ill-defined and a condition classified elsewhere is reported on the certificate, reselect the cause of death as if the ill-defined condition had not been reported, except to take account of that condition it if modifies the coding. The following conditions are regarded as ill-defined: I46.9 (Cardiac arrest, unspecified); I95.9 Hypotension, unspecified); I99 (Other and unspecified disorders of circulatory system); J96.0 (Acute respiratory failure); J96.9 (Respiratory failure, unspecified); P28.5 (Respiratory failure of newborn); R00-R94 or R96-R99 (Symptoms, signs and abnormal clinical and laboratory findings, not elsewhere classified). Note that R95 (Sudden infant death) is not regarded as ill-defined.</p> <p><u>If all other conditions reported on the certificate are ill-defined or trivial, the cause of death should not be reselected. That is, Rule A does not apply.</u></p>	MRG 0316	October 2005	Major	January 2010
Add text						
page 45		<p>4.1.9 The modification rules</p> <p><i>Rule A. Senility and other ill-defined conditions</i></p> <p>... The following conditions are regarded as ill-defined: <u>I46.1 (Sudden cardiac death, so described)</u>; I46.9 (Cardiac arrest, unspecified); I95.9 (Hypotension, unspecified);...</p>	MRG 1248	October 2008	Minor	January 2010
Add condition to list of ill- defined conditions						
Page 42		<p>4.1.9 The modification rules</p> <p><i>Rule B. Trivial conditions</i></p> <p>Where the selected cause is a trivial condition unlikely to cause death and a more serious condition (<u>any condition except an ill-defined or another trivial condition</u>) is reported, reselect the underlying cause... ..of the trivial condition, select the adverse reaction.</p> <p><u>When a trivial condition is reported as causing any other condition, the trivial condition is not discarded, i.e. Rule B is not applicable.</u></p>	MRG 0114	October 2002	Major	January 2006
Add text						
Add text						

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Add text:	4.1.9 The modification rules <i>Rule B. Trivial conditions</i> Where the selected cause is a trivial condition unlikely to cause death (see Appendix 7.1) and a more serious condition (any condition except an ill-defined or another trivial condition) is reported, reselect the underlying cause as if the trivial condition had not been reported. If the death was the result of an adverse reaction to treatment of the trivial condition, select the adverse reaction.	MRG 1121	October 2007	Minor	January 2009
Add text to Volume 2, Second Edition, page 46 and Volume 2 (2008), p. 49	4.1.9 The modification rules <i>Rule C. Linkage</i> ... Where a conflict in linkages occurs, link with the condition that would have been selected if the cause initially selected had not been reported. Make any further linkage that is applicable. <u>Combination codes which express a more specific variety of the condition selected than the originating antecedent cause should be used when available. However, when the combination code is in a different three-character category than the code for the originating antecedent cause, the code for the combination must clearly identify the originating antecedent cause. All possible detail should be retained in the multiple cause coding.</u>	MRG 1218	October 2010	Minor	January 2012
Delete Rule E	4.1.9 The modification rules <i>Rule E. Early and late stages of disease</i> Where the selected cause is an early stage of a disease and a more advanced stage of the same disease is reported on the certificate, code to the more advanced stage. This rule does not apply to a “chronic” form reported as due to an “acute” form unless the classification gives special instructions to that effect.	MRG 1797	October 2011	Minor	January 2013

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Delete Rule F	<p>4.1.9 The modification rules</p> <p>...</p> <p><i>Rule F. Sequelae</i></p> <p>-</p> <p>Where the selected cause is an early form of a condition for which the classification provides a separate "Sequelae of ..." category, and there is evidence that death occurred from residual effects of its condition rather than from those of its active phase, code to the appropriate "Sequelae of ..." category.</p>	MRG 1791	October 2011	Major	January 2013
Modify p.44	<p>4.1.10 Examples of the modification rules</p> <p><i>Rule A. Senility and other ill-defined conditions</i></p> <p>Where the selected cause is ill-defined and a condition classified elsewhere is reported on the certificate, reselect the cause of death as if the ill-defined condition had not been reported, except to take account of that condition if it modifies the coding. The following conditions are regarded as ill-defined: I46.9 (Cardiac arrest, unspecified); I95.9 (Hypotension, unspecified); I99 (Other and unspecified disorders of circulatory system); J96.0 (Acute respiratory failure); J96.9 (Respiratory failure, unspecified); P28.5 (Respiratory failure of newborn); R00-R94 or R96-R99 (Symptoms, signs and abnormal clinical and laboratory findings, not elsewhere classified). Note that R95 (Sudden infant death) is not regarded as ill-defined.</p> <p><u>If all other conditions reported on the certificate are ill-defined or trivial, the cause of death should not be reselected. That is, Rule A does not apply</u></p>	MRG 0316	October 2005	Major	January 2010
page 45	<p>4.1.10 Examples of the modification rules</p> <p><i>Rule A. Senility and other ill-defined conditions</i></p> <p>... The following conditions are regarded as ill-defined: <u>I46.1 (Sudden cardiac death, so described)</u>; I46.9 (Cardiac arrest, unspecified); I95.9 (Hypotension, unspecified);....</p>	MRG 1248	October 2008	Minor	January 2010
Page 48 Change	<p>4.1.10 Examples of the modification rules</p>	MRG 0114	October 2002	Major	January 2006

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
existing text as indicated.	Rule B. Trivial conditions				
Change existing text as indicated	<p><u>(A) Where the selected cause is a trivial condition unlikely to cause death and a more serious condition (any condition except an ill-defined or another trivial condition) is reported, reselect the underlying cause as if the trivial condition has not been reported. If the death was the result of an adverse reaction to treatment of the trivial condition, select the adverse reaction.</u></p> <p><i>Example 38:</i> I (a) Dental caries II Cardiac arrest <u>Diabetes</u></p> <p>Code to cardiac arrest (I46.9) <u>diabetes (E14.9)</u>. Dental caries, selected by the General Principle, is ignored.</p> <p><i>Example 39:</i> (no change to existing example)</p>				
Change existing text as indicated	<p><u>(B) If the death was the result of an adverse reaction to treatment of the trivial condition, select the adverse reaction.</u></p> <p><i>Example 40:</i> I (a) Intraoperative haemorrhage (b) Tonsillectomy (c) Hypertrophy of tonsils</p> <p>Code to haemorrhage during surgical operation (Y60.0). <u>Code to the adverse reaction to treatment of the hypertrophy of tonsils, selected by the General Principle.</u></p>				
Change existing text as indicated	<p><u>(C) When a trivial condition is reported as causing any other condition, the trivial condition is not discarded (i.e. Rule B is not applicable).</u></p> <p><i>Example 41:</i> I (a) Bursitis and ulcerative colitis <u>Septicaemia</u> (b) <u>Impetigo</u></p> <p>Code to ulcerative colitis (K51.9). Bursitis, selected by Rule 2 (see Example 20), is ignored. <u>Code to impetigo (L01.0) The trivial condition selected by the General Principle is not discarded since it is reported as the cause of another condition.</u></p>				
Change existing text as indicated	<p><i>Example 42:</i> I (a) Paronychia <u>Respiratory insufficiency</u></p>				

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Change existing text as indicated	<p>H (b) Tetanus <u>Upper respiratory infection</u></p> <p>Code to tetanus (A35). Paronychia, selected by the General Principle, is ignored.</p> <p><u>Code to upper respiratory infection (J06.9). The trivial condition selected by the General Principle is not discarded</u> <u>since it is reported as the cause of another condition.</u></p>				
Add text:	<p>4.1.10 Examples of the modification rules</p> <p><i>Rule B. Trivial conditions</i></p> <p>Where the selected cause is a trivial condition unlikely to cause death (<u>see Appendix 7.1</u>) and a more serious condition (any condition except an ill-defined or another trivial condition) is reported, reselect the underlying cause as if the trivial condition had not been reported. If the death was the result of an adverse reaction to treatment of the trivial condition, select the adverse reaction.</p>	MRG 1121	October 2007	Minor	January 2009
Page 47 Add text	<p>4.1.10 Examples of the modification rules</p> <p><i>Rule C. Linkage</i></p> <p><u>Example 55: I (a) Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia</u> <u> (b) HIV</u> <u> Code to B20.6. HIV, selected by the General Principle, links</u> <u>with</u> <u>Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia.</u></p> <p><u>Example 56: I (a) Respiratory failure</u> <u> (b) HIV</u> <u> Code to B24. Respiratory failure is an ill-defined condition</u> <u>and does</u> <u>not link to any of the categories in B20-B23.</u></p>	MRG 0202	October 2003	Minor	January 2005
Revise text	<p>4.1.10 Examples of the modification rules</p> <p><i>Rule C. Linkage</i></p> <p><u>Example 55: I (a) Pneumocystis carinii [jiirovecii] pneumonia</u> <u> (b) HIV</u></p>	Germany 1014		Minor	January 2008

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p>Code to B20.6. HIV, selected by the General Principle, links with Pneumocystis carinii <u>[jirovecii]</u> pneumonia.</p> <p>80</p>				
<p>Add text and examples to Volume 2, Second Edition, page 49 and Volume 2 (2008), p. 52</p> <p>Renumber subsequent examples</p>	<p>4.1.10 Examples of the modification rules</p> <p><i>Rule C. Linkage</i></p> <p>...</p> <p>Where a conflict in linkages occurs, link with the condition that would have been selected if the cause initially selected had not been reported. Make any further linkage that is applicable.</p> <p><u>Combination codes which express a more specific variety of the condition selected than the originating antecedent cause should be used when available. However, when the combination code is in a different three-character category than the code for the originating antecedent cause, the code for the combination must clearly identify the originating antecedent cause. All possible detail should be retained in the multiple cause coding.</u></p> <p><i>Example 43:</i> I (a) <u>Cardiomyopathy</u> (b) <u>Alcoholism</u></p> <p> <u>Code alcoholic cardiomyopathy (I42.6)</u></p> <p><i>Example 4344</i> I (a) Intestinal obstruction (b) Femoral hernia</p> <p> Code to femoral hernia with obstruction (<u>K41.3</u>).</p> <p><i>Example 45:</i> I (a) <u>Epileptic attack</u> (b) <u>Chronic alcoholism</u></p> <p> <u>Code to chronic alcoholism (F10.2). Special epileptic syndromes are indexed to G40.5, but that combination code does not identify the originating antecedent cause.</u></p>	<p>MRG 1218</p>	<p>October 2010</p>	<p>Minor</p>	<p>January 2012</p>

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Revise code:	<p>4.1.10 Examples of the modification rules</p> <p><i>Rule D. Specificity</i></p> <p><i>Example 60:</i> I (a) Pericarditis (b) Uraemia and pneumonia</p> <p>Code to uraemic pericarditis (N18.8 5). Uraemia, selected by Rule 1 (see Example 14), modifies the pericarditis.</p>	Australia 1241	October 2007	Major	January 2010
Add text to end of section 4.1.10	<p>4.1.10 Examples of the modification rules</p> <p>...</p> <p><u>Application of Rule 3 following modification</u></p> <p><u>After application of the modification rules, selection Rule 3 should be reapplied. However, Rule 3 should not be applied if the originating cause selected by application of the modification rules is correctly reported as due to another condition, except when this other condition is ill-defined or trivial.</u></p> <p><u>Ex xx:</u> I(a) Septicemia (b) Arterial embolism (c) Circulatory insufficiency II Malignant neoplasm of colon</p> <p><u>Code to malignant neoplasm of colon (C18.9). Circulatory insufficiency, selected by the General Principle, is ignored (Rule A Senility and other ill-defined conditions) and arterial embolism is selected as the originating cause. Arterial embolism can be considered a direct consequence of malignant neoplasm of colon (a wasting condition). Rule 3 applies, and malignant neoplasm of colon (C18.9) is selected as underlying cause of death.</u></p> <p><u>Ex xx:</u> I(a) Septicemia (b) Arterial embolism (c) Generalized atherosclerosis II Malignant neoplasm of colon</p> <p><u>Code to arterial embolism (I74.9). Generalized atherosclerosis, selected by the General Principle, links with arterial embolism (Rule C). Although arterial embolism can be considered a direct consequence of malignant neoplasm of colon (a wasting condition) it</u></p>	1470 MRG	October 2009	Minor	January 2011

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<u>is reported as due to generalized atherosclerosis on this certificate. Rule 3 is, therefore, not applied.</u>				
Delete Rule E	<p>4.1.10 Examples of the modification rules</p> <p><i>Rule E. Early and late stages of disease</i> Where the selected cause is an early stage of a disease and a more advanced stage of the same disease is reported on the certificate, code to the more advanced stage. This rule does not apply to a “chronic” form reported as due to an “acute” form unless the classification gives special instructions to that effect. <i>Example 63:</i> I (a) Tertiary syphilis (b) Primary syphilis Code to tertiary syphilis (A52.9). <i>Example 64:</i> I (a) Eclampsia during pregnancy (b) Pre eclampsia Code to eclampsia during pregnancy (O15.0). <i>Example 65:</i> I (a) Chronic myocarditis (b) Acute myocarditis Code to acute myocarditis (I40.9). <i>Example 66:</i> I (a) Chronic nephritis (b) Acute nephritis Code to chronic nephritis, unspecified (N03.9), as special instruction is given to this effect.</p>	MRG 1797	October 2011	Minor	January 2013
Delete Rule F	<p>4.1.10 Examples of the modification rules</p> <p>...</p> <p><i>Rule F. Sequelae</i> - Where the selected cause is an early form of a condition for which the classification provides a separate “Sequelae of ...” category, and there is evidence that death occurred from residual effects of its condition rather than from those of its active phase, code to the appropriate “Sequelae of ...” category. - “Sequelae of ...” categories are as follows: B90-B94, E64., E68, G09, I69, O97 and Y85-Y87. - <i>Example 67:</i> I (a) Pulmonary fibrosis</p>	MRG 1791	October 2011	Major	January 2013

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p>-(b) Old pulmonary tuberculosis Code to sequelae of respiratory tuberculosis (B90.9): Example 68: I (a) Bronchopneumonia</p> <p>-(b) Curvature of spine -(c) Rickets in childhood Code to sequelae of rickets (E64.3): Example 69: I (a) Hydrocephalus</p> <p>-(b) Tuberculous meningitis Code to sequelae of tuberculous meningitis (B90.0): Example 70: I (a) Hypostatic pneumonia</p> <p>-(b) Hemiplegia -(c) Cerebrovascular accident (40 years) Code to sequelae of cerebrovascular accident (I69.4): Example 71: I (a) Chronic nephritis</p> <p>-(b) Scarlet fever Code to sequelae of other specified infectious and parasitic diseases (B94.8). The description of the nephritis as chronic implies that the scarlet fever is no longer in its active phase.</p>				
<p>Page 51</p> <p>Add text</p>	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p>B20- B24 Human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease Conditions classifiable...specify the individual conditions listed.</p> <p><u>D50-D89 Diseases of blood and blood-forming organs and Certain disorders involving the immune mechanism</u></p> <p><u>as the cause of:</u></p> <p><u>B20-B24 Human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease and where the certificate indicates the HIV disease is a result of a blood transfusion given as treatment for the originating condition, code B20-B24</u></p>	<p>MRG 0108</p>	<p>October 2001</p>	<p>Major</p>	<p>January 2003</p>
<p>Page 51</p> <p>Add text</p>	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p>A46 Erysipelas ... <u>B16 Acute hepatitis B</u></p>	<p>MRG 0173</p>	<p>October 2003</p>	<p>Minor</p>	<p>January 2005</p>

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction		Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
		<p><u>B17 Other acute viral hepatitis</u> <u>when reported as the originating antecedent cause of:</u></p> <p><u>K72.1 (Chronic hepatic failure), code B18.-</u> <u>K74.0-K74.2, K74.4-K74.6 (Fibrosis and cirrhosis of liver),</u> <u>code B18.-</u></p> <p>B20-B24 Human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease</p>				
Page 51	Delete text	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p>B20-B24 Human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease</p> <p>The subcategories at B20-B23 are the only optional four character codes for countries using the four character version of ICD-10. These four character subcategories are provided for use where it is not possible or not desired to use multiple cause coding.</p> <p><u>Modes of dying, ill-defined and trivial conditions reported as complications of HIV infection should not be linked to categories in B20-B23, unless there is a specific entry in Volume 3 to that effect.</u></p> <p>Conditions classifiable to two or more subcategories..</p>	MRG 0202	October 2003	Minor	January 2005
	Add new paragraph					
	Revise text: Page 54	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p>The following notes often indicate that if the provisionally selected code, as indicated in the left-hand column, is present with one of the conditions listed below it, the code to be used is the one shown in bold type. There are two types of combination: “with mention of” means that the other condition may appear anywhere on the certificate; “when reported as the originating antecedent cause of” means that the other condition must appear in a correct causal relationship or be otherwise indicated as being “due to” the originating antecedent cause.</p> <p>A40.- Streptococcal septicaemia <u>sepsis</u></p> <p>A41.- Other septicaemia <u>sepsis</u></p>	MbRG 1238	October 2007	Major	January 2010
	Add text: p. 55	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p>	MRG 1142	October 2007	Major	January 2010

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Note – changes from URC#1241 Chronic kidney disease have been incorporated where appropriate)	<p><u>E10-E14</u> <u>Diabetes mellitus</u> <i>when reported as the originating antecedent cause of:</i></p> <p><u>E87.2</u> (Acidosis), code E10-E14 with fourth character .1</p> <p><u>E88.8</u> (Other specified metabolic disorders), code E10-E14 with fourth character .1</p> <p><u>G58.-</u> (Other mononeuropathies), code E10-E14 with fourth character .4</p> <p><u>G62.9</u> (Polyneuropathy, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .4</p> <p><u>G64</u> (Other disorders of peripheral nervous system), code E10-E14 with fourth character .4</p> <p><u>G70.9</u> (Myoneural disorder, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .4</p> <p><u>G71.8</u> (Other primary disorders of muscles), code E10-E14 with fourth character .4</p> <p><u>G90.9</u> (Disorder of autonomic nervous system, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .4</p> <p><u>H20.9</u> (Iridocyclitis), code E10-E14 with fourth character .3</p> <p><u>H26.9</u> (Cataract, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .3</p> <p><u>H30.9</u> (Chorioretinal inflammation, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .3</p> <p><u>H34</u> (Retinal vascular occlusions), code E10-E14 with fourth character .3</p> <p><u>H35.0</u> (Background retinopathy and retinal vascular changes), code E10-E14 with fourth character .3</p> <p><u>H35.2</u> (Other proliferative retinopathy), code E10-E14 with fourth character .3</p> <p><u>H35.6</u> (Retinal haemorrhage), code E10-E14 with fourth character .3</p> <p><u>H35.9</u> (Retinal disorder, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .3</p> <p><u>H49.9</u> (Paralytic strabismus, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .3</p> <p><u>H54</u> (Blindness and low vision), code E10-E14 with fourth character .3</p> <p><u>I70.2</u> (Atherosclerosis of arteries of extremities), code E10-E14 with fourth character .5</p> <p><u>I73.9</u> (Peripheral vascular disease, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .5</p>				

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p><u>I99</u> (Other and unspecified disorders of circulatory system), if angiopathy, code E10-E14 with fourth character .5</p> <p><u>L30.9</u> (Dermatitis, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .6</p> <p><u>L92.1</u> (Necrobiosis lipoidica, not elsewhere classified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .6</p> <p><u>M13.9</u> (Arthritis, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .6</p> <p><u>M79.2</u> (Neuralgia and neuritis, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .4</p> <p><u>M89.9</u> (Disorder of bone, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .6</p> <p><u>N03-N05</u> (Nephrotic syndrome), code E10-E14 with fourth character .2</p> <p><u>N18.-</u> (Chronic kidney disease), code E10-E14 with fourth character .2</p> <p><u>N19</u> (Unspecified kidney failure), code E10-E14 with fourth character .2</p> <p><u>N26</u> (Unspecified contracted kidney), code E10-E14 with fourth character .2</p> <p><u>N28.9</u> (Disorder of kidney and ureter, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .2</p> <p><u>N39.0</u> (Urinary tract infection, site not specified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .6</p> <p><u>N39.1</u> (Persistent proteinuria, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .2</p> <p><u>R02</u> (Gangrene, not elsewhere classified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .5</p> <p><u>R40.2</u> (Coma, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .0</p> <p><u>R79.8</u> (Other specified abnormal findings of blood chemistry), if acetonemia, azotemia, and related conditions, code E10-E14 with fourth character .1</p> <p>Any of above in combination, code E10-E14 with fourth character .7</p>				
Page 55	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p>F10-F19 Mental and behavioural disorders due to psychoactive substance use</p>	Canada 1133	October 2007	Minor	January 2009

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Add codes and text:	<p><i>with mention of:</i> X40-X49 (Accidental poisoning by and exposure to noxious substances), code X40-X49 ... Fourth character .0 (Acute intoxication), code X40-X49, X60-X69, X85-X90 or Y10-Y19 Fourth character .5 (Psychotic disorder) <i>with mention of</i> Dependence syndrome (.2), code F10-F19 with fourth character .2 F10.- Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol</p> <p><i>with mention of:</i> E24.4 (Alcohol-induced Cushing's syndrome), code E24.4 ... F10.0 <u>Acute intoxication due to use of alcohol</u></p> <p><i>with mention of:</i> F10.2 <u>(Dependence syndrome due to use of alcohol)</u>, code F10.2 F10.2 Dependence syndrome due to use of alcohol</p> <p><i>with mention of:</i> F10.4, F10.6, F10.7 Withdrawal state with delirium, Amnesic syndrome, Residual and late-onset psychotic disorder, code F10.4, F10.6, F10.7</p>				
Revise code titles in list	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p>I10 Essential (primary) hypertension <i>with mention of:</i></p> <p>N05.- (Unspecified nephritic syndrome), code N05.- N18.- (Chronic renal failure kidney disease), code I12.- N19 (Unspecified renal failure), code I12.-</p> <p>I11.- Hypertensive heart disease <i>with mention of:</i></p> <p>I20-I25 (Ischaemic heart disease), code I20-I25 N18.- (Chronic renal failure kidney disease), code I13.- N19 (Unspecified renal failure), code I13.-</p>	Australia 1241	October 2007	Major	January 2010

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p>N00.- Acute nephritic syndrome <i>when reported as the originating antecedent cause of:</i> N03.- (Chronic nephritic syndrome), code N03.-</p> <p>N18.- Chronic renal failure <u>Chronic kidney disease</u> N19 Unspecified renal failure</p>				
Add text:	<p>4.1.11 Notes for underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p><u>K71</u> <u>Toxic liver disease</u> <i>with mention of:</i> <u>T51.-</u> <u>(Toxic effect of alcohol), code K70.-</u></p> <p>K72 Hepatic failure, not elsewhere classified <i>with mention of:</i> F10.- (Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol), code K70.4 <u>T51.-</u> <u>(Toxic effect of alcohol), code K70.4</u></p> <p>K73 Chronic hepatitis, not elsewhere classified <i>with mention of:</i> F10.- (Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol), code K70.1 <u>T51.-</u> <u>(Toxic effect of alcohol), code K70.1</u></p> <p>K74.0 Hepatic fibrosis <i>with mention of:</i> F10.- (Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol), code K70.2 <u>T51.-</u> <u>(Toxic effect of alcohol), code K70.2</u></p> <p>K74.1 Hepatic sclerosis <i>with mention of:</i> F10.- (Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol), code K70.2</p>	MRG 1210	October 2007	Minor	January 2009

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p><u>T51.-</u> <u>(Toxic effect of alcohol), code K70.2</u></p> <p>K74.2 Hepatic fibrosis with hepatic sclerosis</p> <p><i>with mention of:</i></p> <p>F10.- (Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol), code K70.2</p> <p><u>T51.-</u> <u>(Toxic effect of alcohol), code K70.2</u></p> <p>K74.6 Other and unspecified cirrhosis of liver</p> <p><i>with mention of:</i></p> <p>F10.- (Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol), code K70.3</p> <p><u>T51.-</u> <u>(Toxic effect of alcohol), code K70.3</u></p> <p>K75.9 Inflammatory liver disease, unspecified</p> <p><i>with mention of:</i></p> <p>F10.- (Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol), code K70.1</p> <p><u>T51.-</u> <u>(Toxic effect of alcohol), code K70.1</u></p> <p>K76.0 Fatty (change) of liver, not elsewhere classified</p> <p><i>with mention of:</i></p> <p>F10.- (Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol), code K70.0</p> <p><u>T51.-</u> <u>(Toxic effect of alcohol), code K70.0</u></p> <p>K76.9 Liver disease, unspecified</p> <p><i>with mention of:</i></p> <p>F10.- (Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol), code K70.9</p> <p><u>T51.-</u> <u>(Toxic effect of alcohol), code K70.9</u></p>				
pp. 54-55 Add text:	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p>B95-B97 Bacterial, viral and other infectious agents Not to be used for underlying cause mortality coding.</p> <p>C97 <u>Malignant neoplasms of independent (primary) multiple sites</u></p>	MRG 1066	October 2007	Major	January 2010

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<u>Not to be used for underlying cause mortality coding. When multiple but independent malignant neoplasms are reported on the death certificate, select the underlying cause by applying the Selection and Modification Rules in the normal way. See also section 4.2.7, Malignant neoplasms.</u>				
Page 52 Change existing text as indicated	<u>F03-F09 Organic, including symptomatic, mental disorders</u> Not to be used if the underlying physical condition is known	MRG 0151	October 2003	Minor	January 2005
Page 52 Add text	4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding F10-F19 Mental and behavioural disorders due to psychoactive substance use	MRG 0117	October 2002	Major	January 2006
Delete text	<u>with mention of:</u> <u>X40-X49 Accidental poisoning by and exposure to noxious substances, code X40-X49</u> <u>X60-X69 Intentional self-poisoning by and exposure to noxious substances, code X60-X69</u> <u>X85-X90 Assault by noxious substances, code X85-X90</u> <u>Y10-Y19 Poisoning by and exposure to drugs, chemicals and noxious substances, code Y10-Y19</u>				
Add text	Fourth characters .0 (Acute intoxication) and .5 (Psychotic disorder) with mention of Dependence syndrome (.2), code F10-F19 with fourth character .2 <u>Fourth character .0 (Acute intoxication), code X40-X49, X60-X69, X85-X90 or Y10-Y19</u> <u>Fourth character .5 (Psychotic disorder) with mention of Dependence syndrome (.2), code F10-F19 with fourth character .2</u>				
Page 52 Add text	4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding F10.- Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol <u>with mention of:</u> <u>K70.- (Alcoholic liver disease), code K70.-</u> <u>K72 (Hepatic failure, not elsewhere classified), code K70.4</u>	MRG 0192	October 2003	Minor	January 2005

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<u>K73 (Chronic hepatitis, not elsewhere classified), code K70.1</u> <u>K74.0 (Hepatic fibrosis), code K70.2</u> <u>K74.1 (Hepatic sclerosis), code K70.2</u> <u>K74.2 (Hepatic fibrosis with hepatic sclerosis), code K70.2</u> <u>K74.6 (Other and unspecified cirrhosis of liver), code K70.3</u> <u>K75.9 (Inflammatory liver disease, unspecified), code K70.1</u> <u>K76.0 (Fatty (change) of liver, not elsewhere classified), code K70.0</u> <u>K76.9 (Liver disease, unspecified), code K70.9</u>				
Page 52	4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding F10.- Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol <i>With mention of:</i> <u>E24.4 (Alcohol-induced Cushing's syndrome), code E24.4</u> <u>G31.2 (Degeneration of the nervous system due to alcohol), code G31.2</u> <u>G62.1 (Alcoholic polyneuropathy), code G62.1</u> <u>G72.1 (Alcoholic myopathy), code G72.1</u> <u>I42.6 (Alcoholic cardiomyopathy), code I42.6</u> <u>K29.2 (Alcoholic gastritis), code K29.2</u> K70.- (Alcoholic liver disease), code K70.- <u>K85 (Acute pancreatitis), code K85</u> <u>K86.0 (Alcohol-induced chronic pancreatitis), code K86.0</u> <u>O35.4 (Maternal care for (suspected) damage to foetus from alcohol), code, O35.4</u>	MRG 0160	October 2003	Minor	January 2005
Add text					
	4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding F10.- Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol <i>with mention of:</i> ... K76.9 (Liver disease, unspecified), code K70.9 ... <u>K85.2 (Alcohol-induced acute pancreatitis), code K85.2</u> ... K86.0 (Alcohol-induced chronic pancreatitis), code K86.0 <u>K85.9 Acute pancreatitis, unspecified</u> <i>with mention of:</i>	MRG 1065	October 2006	Minor	January 2008
Add text page 55					

Instruction		Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
		... <u>F10.- (Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol), code K85.2</u>				
Page 52		4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding	MRG 0209	October 2004	Minor	January 2006
Delete text		F17.- Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of tobacco when reported as the originating antecedent cause of:				
Add text		C34. (Malignant neoplasm of bronchus and lung), code C34. I20-I25 (Ischaemic heart disease), code I20-I25 J40-J47 (Chronic lower respiratory disease), code J40-J47 <u>Not to be used if the resultant physical condition is known</u>				
Page 53		<u>I08 Multiple valve diseases</u>	MRG 0199	October 2003	Minor	January 2005
Add text		<u>Not to be used for multiple valvular diseases of specified, but non rheumatic origin. When multiple valvular diseases of non-rheumatic origin are reported on the same death certificate, the underlying should be selected by applying the General Principle or Rules 1,2 or normal way.</u>				
Page 55		4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding	MRG 0210	October 2004	Major	January 2006
Delete text		I15. Secondary hypertension Not to be used for underlying cause mortality coding. If the cause is not stated, code to Other ill-defined and unspecified causes of mortality (R99).				
Add text		I15.0 Renovascular hypertension <u>Not to be used if the antecedent condition is known or can be inferred by an application of Rule 3. If the antecedent condition is not known or cannot be inferred, code to I15.0.</u>				

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p><u>I15.1 Hypertension secondary to other renal disorders</u></p> <p><u>Not to be used if the antecedent condition is known or can be inferred by an application of Rule 3. If the antecedent condition is not known or cannot be inferred, code to N28.9.</u></p> <p><u>I15.2 Hypertension secondary to endocrine disorders</u></p> <p><u>Not to be used if the antecedent condition is known or can be inferred by an application of Rule 3. If the antecedent condition is not known or cannot be inferred, code to E34.9.</u></p> <p><u>I15.8 Other secondary hypertension</u></p> <p><u>Not to be used if the antecedent condition is known or can be inferred by an application of Rule 3. If the antecedent condition is not known or cannot be inferred, code to I15.8.</u></p> <p><u>I15.9 Secondary hypertension, unspecified</u></p> <p><u>Not to be used if the antecedent condition is known or can be inferred by an application of Rule 3. If the antecedent condition is not known or cannot be inferred, code to I15.9.</u></p>				
Page 55	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p>I24.0 Coronary thrombosis not resulting in myocardial infarction</p> <p>Not to be used for underlying cause mortality coding. For mortality the occurrence of myocardial infarction is assumed and assignment made to I21.- or I22.- as appropriate</p> <p>I25.2 <u>Old myocardial infarction</u></p> <p><u>Not to be used for underlying cause mortality coding. If</u></p>	MRG 0261	October 2004	Major	January 2006
Add text					

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p><u>the cause is not stated, code to Other forms of chronic ischaemic heart disease (I25.8)</u></p> <p>I27.9 Pulmonary heart disease, unspecified</p> <p><i>with mention of:</i></p> <p>M41.- (Scoliosis), code I27.1</p>				
Page 56 Add text	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p><u>I60-I69 Cerebrovascular diseases</u></p> <p><u>when reported as the originating antecedent cause of conditions</u> in:</p> <p><u>F01-F03, code F01</u></p>	MRG 0151	October 2003	Minor	January 2005
Page 56 Modify code range Add text	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p>I67.2 Cerebral atherosclerosis</p> <p><i>with mention of:</i></p> <p>I60-I66 (Cerebral haemorrhage, cerebral infarction or stroke, <u>occlusion and stenosis of precerebral and cerebral arteries</u>), code I60-I64.</p>	MRG 0163	October 2003	Minor	January 2005
pp.56-7 Modify	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p>I67.2 Cerebral atherosclerosis</p> <p><i>with mention of:</i></p> <p>I60-I66 (Cerebral haemorrhage, cerebral infarction or stroke, occlusion and stenosis of precerebral and cerebral arteries), code I60-I64.</p> <p><i>When reported as the originating antecedent cause of conditions in:</i></p> <p>F03 (Unspecified dementia), code F01.-</p> <p>G20 (Parkinson's disease), code G20 G21.4</p> <p><u>G21.9 (Secondary parkinsonism, unspecified), code G21.4</u></p>	MRG 0338	October 2005	Major	January 2010

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p>I70.9 Generalised and unspecified atherosclerosis</p> <p><i>With mention of:</i> R02 (Gangrene, not elsewhere classified), code I70.2</p> <p><i>When reported as the originating antecedent cause of:</i> F01 (Vascular dementia), code F01.- F03 (Unspecified dementia), code F01.- G20 (Parkinson's disease), code G20G21.4 <u>G21.9 (Secondary parkinsonism, unspecified), code G21.4</u></p>				
<p>Page 57</p> <p>Change existing text as indicated</p> <p>Delete text</p> <p>Add text</p>	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p>I70.- Atherosclerosis</p> <p><i>With mention of:</i></p> <p>I10-I13 (Hypertensive disease), code I10-I13 I20-I25 (Ischaemic heart diseases), code I20-I25 I50.- (Heart failure), code I50.- I51.4 (Myocarditis, unspecified), code I51.4 I51.5 (Myocardial degeneration), code I51.5 I51.6 (Cardiovascular disease, unspecified), code I51.6 I51.8 (Other ill-defined heart diseases), code I51.8 I51.9 (Heart disease, unspecified), code I51.9 I60-I69 (Cerebrovascular diseases), code I60-I69</p> <p><i>When reported as the originating antecedent cause of:</i></p> <p>I05-I09 (Conditions classifiable to I05-I09 but not specified as rheumatic), code I34-I38 I34-I38 (Nonrheumatic valve disorders), code I34-I38 I51.9 (Heart disease, unspecified), code I25.1 I71-I78 (Other diseases of arteries, arterioles and capillaries), code I71-I78 K55.- (Vascular disorders of intestine), code K55.- N26 (Unspecified contracted kidney), code I12.-</p>	MRG 0152	October 2003	Major	January 2006

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Page 57	4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding I70.- Atherosclerosis <i>With mention of:</i> ... <i>when reported as the originating antecedent cause of:</i> I05-I09 (Conditions classifiable to I05-I09 but not specified as rheumatic), code I34-I38 I34-I38 (Nonrheumatic valve disorders), code I34-I38 I71-I78 (Other diseases of arteries, arterioles and capillaries), code I71-I78 K55.- (Vascular disorders of intestine), code K55.- <u>N03 (Chronic nephritis), code I12.-</u> N26 (Unspecified contracted kidney), code I12.-	MRG 0170	October 2003	Minor	January 2005
Add text					
Page 57	4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding I70.9 Generalised and unspecified atherosclerosis <i>With mention of:</i> R02 (Gangrene, not elsewhere classified), code I70.2 <i>When reported as the originating antecedent cause of:</i> <u>F01 (Vascular dementia), code F01.-</u> F03 (Unspecified dementia), code F01.- G20 (Parkinson's disease) , code G20	MRG 0151	October 2003	Minor	January 2005
Add text					
Modify page 61	4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding J00 Acute nasopharyngitis [common cold] J06.- Acute upper respiratory infections of multiple and unspecified sites <i>when reported as the originating antecedent cause of:</i> G03.8 (Meningitis), code G03.8	MRG –proposed and ratified at meeting in Tokyo October 2005	October 2005	Major	October 2005

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Revise code	<p>G06.0 (Intracranial abscess and granuloma), code G06.0</p> <p>H65-H66 (Otitis media), code H65-H66</p> <p>H70.- (Mastoiditis and related conditions), code H70.-</p> <p>J09-J10 J18 (Influenza and pneumonia), code J09 J10-J18</p> <p>J20-J21 (Bronchitis and bronchiolitis), code J20-J21</p> <p>J40-J42 (Unspecified and chronic bronchitis), code J40-J42</p> <p>J44.- (Other chronic obstructive pulmonary disease), code J44.-</p> <p>N00.- (Acute nephritic syndrome), code N00.-</p>				
Add text p. 61	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p>J06.- Acute upper respiratory infections of multiple and unspecified sites</p> <p>...</p> <p><u>J18.- Pneumonia, organism unspecified</u></p> <p><i>With mention of:</i></p> <p><u>R26.3 (Immobility), code to J18.2</u></p> <p>J20.- Acute bronchitis</p>	MRG 1037	October 2006	Major	January 2010
Add text	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p>J43.- Emphysema</p> <p>...</p> <p><u>J44.8-J44.9 Other and unspecified chronic obstructive pulmonary disease</u></p> <p><i>With mention of:</i></p> <p><u>J12-J18 (Pneumonia), code J44.0</u></p> <p><u>J20-J22 (Other acute lower respiratory infections), code J44.0</u></p> <p>J45.- Asthma</p>	MRG 1035	October 2006	Major	January 2010
Page 59 Add text	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p>J95.- Postprocedural respiratory disorders, not elsewhere classified</p> <p>Not to be used for underlying cause mortality coding. See Operations, p 71.</p> <p><u>K72 Hepatic failure, not elsewhere classified</u></p> <p><i>with mention of:</i></p>	MRG 0192	October 2003	Minor	January 2005

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p><u>F10.- (Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol), code K70.4</u></p> <p><u>K73 Chronic hepatitis, not elsewhere classified</u></p> <p><u>with mention of:</u></p> <p><u>F10.- (Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol), code K70.1</u></p> <p><u>K74.0 Hepatic fibrosis</u></p> <p><u>with mention of:</u></p> <p><u>F10.- (Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol), code K70.2</u></p> <p><u>K74.1 Hepatic sclerosis</u></p> <p><u>with mention of:</u></p> <p><u>F10.- (Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol), code K70.2</u></p> <p><u>K74.2 Hepatic fibrosis with hepatic sclerosis</u></p> <p><u>with mention of:</u></p> <p><u>F10.- (Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol), code K70.2</u></p> <p><u>K74.6 Other and unspecified cirrhosis of liver</u></p> <p><u>with mention of:</u></p> <p><u>F10.- (Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol), code K70.3</u></p> <p><u>K75.9 Inflammatory liver disease, unspecified</u></p> <p><u>with mention of:</u></p>				

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p><u>F10.- (Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol), code K70.1</u></p> <p><u>K76.0 Fatty (change) of liver, not elsewhere classified</u></p> <p><u>with mention of:</u></p> <p><u>F10.- (Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol), code K70.0</u></p> <p><u>K76.9 Liver disease, unspecified</u></p> <p><u>with mention of:</u></p> <p><u>F10.- (Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol), code K70.9</u></p>				
Add instructional note p. 61 2 nd edition, page 65	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p>P07.- Disorders related to short gestation and low birth weight, not elsewhere classified</p> <p>P08.- Disorders related to long gestation and high birth weight</p> <p>Not to be used if any other cause of perinatal mortality is reported. <u>This does not apply if the only other cause of perinatal mortality reported is respiratory failure of newborn (P28.5).</u></p>	MRG 1026	October 2006	Minor	January 2008
Page 61 Add text Add text	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p><u>P70.3 – P72.0 Transitory endocrine and metabolic disorders specific to fetus and newborn</u></p> <p><u>Not to be used for underlying cause mortality coding. If no other perinatal cause is reported, code to Condition originating in the perinatal period, unspecified (P96.9).</u></p> <p><u>P72.2 – P74 Transitory endocrine and metabolic disorders specific to fetus and newborn</u></p> <p><u>Not to be used for underlying cause mortality coding. If no other</u></p>	MRG 0120	October 2002	Minor	January 2004

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<u>perinatal cause is reported, code to Condition</u> <u>originating in the perinatal period,</u> <u>unspecified (P96.9).</u>				
Page 65 Add new note:	4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding ... perinatal period, unspecified (P96.9) <u>R57.2 Septic shock</u> <u>R65.0 Systemic inflammatory response syndrome of infectious</u> <u>origin without organ failure</u> <u>R65.1 Systemic inflammatory response syndrome of infectious</u> <u>origin with organ failure</u> <u>Not to be used for underlying cause mortality coding. Code to the originating</u> <u>infectious disease (A00-B99). If no originating infectious disease is</u> <u>mentioned, code to unspecified sepsis (A41.9).</u> R69.- Unknown and unspecified causes of morbidity	MbRG 1240	October 2008	Major	January 2010
Page 61 Add text	4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding R69.- Unknown and unspecified causes of morbidity ... S00-T98 Injury, poisoning and certain other consequences of external causes Not to be used for underlying cause mortality coding except as an additional code to the relevant category in V01-Y89. <u>When a disease of bone density is reported on the same line or as the</u> <u>original antecedent cause of a fracture, the fracture should be considered pathological,</u> <u>code M80.-.</u> S02.- ...	MRG 0174	October 2003	Minor	January 2005
Page 61 Delete text	4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding T36-T50 Poisoning by drugs, medicaments and biological substances (accidental poisoning and poisoning of undetermined intent by alcohol or dependence producing drugs)	MRG 0117	October 2002	Major	January 2006

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p>with mention of:</p> <p>F10-F19 with fourth character .2 (alcohol dependence or drug dependence), code F10-F19 with fourth character .2</p>				
<p>Page 62</p> <p>Delete text</p>	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p>X40-X49 Accidental poisoning by and exposure to noxious substances Y10-Y15 Poisoning by and exposure to noxious substances, undetermined intent (poisoning by alcohol or dependence producing drugs)</p> <p>with mention of:</p> <p>F10-F19 with fourth character .2 (alcohol dependence or drug dependence), code F10-F19 with fourth character .2</p>	MRG 0117	October 2002	Major	January 2006
Add text:	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p><u>C77-C79</u> <u>Secondary malignant neoplasms</u></p> <p><u>Not to be used for underlying cause mortality coding. If primary site of malignant neoplasm is not known indicated, code to Malignant neoplasm without specification of site (C80.-)</u> <u>or</u></p>	Canada 1603	October 2009	Minor	January 2011
Add text	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p>I10 Essential (primary) hypertension</p> <p><i>with mention of:</i></p> <p>I11.- (Hypertensive heart disease), code I11.- I12.- (Hypertensive renal disease), code I12.- I13.- (Hypertensive heart and renal disease), code I13.- I20-I25 (Ischaemic heart disease), code I20-I25 I50.- (Heart failure), code I11.0 I51.4- (Complications and ill-defined I51.9 descriptions of heart disease), code I11.-</p>	MRG 1554	October 2009	Major	January 2013

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Delete text	<p>I60-I69 (Cerebrovascular disease), code I60-I69 N00.- (Acute nephritic syndrome), code N00.- ... <i>when reported as the originating antecedent cause of:</i> H35.0 (Background retinopathy and other vascular changes), code H35.0 I05-I09 (Conditions classifiable to I05-I09 but not specified as rheumatic), code I34-I38 I34-I38 (Nonrheumatic valve disorders), code I34-I38 I50. (Heart failure), code I11.0 I51.4 (Complications and ill-defined I51.9 descriptions of heart disease), code I11.-</p> <p>I11.- Hypertensive heart disease <i>with mention of:</i> I12.- (Hypertensive renal disease), code I13.- I13.- (Hypertensive heart and renal disease), code I13.- I20-I25 (Ischaemic heart disease), code I20-I25 N18.- (Chronic renal failure), code I13.- N19 (Unspecified renal failure), code I13.- N26 (Unspecified contracted kidney), code I13.-</p> <p>I12.- Hypertensive renal disease <i>with mention of:</i> I11.- (Hypertensive heart disease), code I13.- I13.- (Hypertensive heart and renal disease), code I13.- I20-I25 (Ischaemic heart disease), code I20-I25 I50. (Heart failure), code I13.0 I51.4 (Complications and ill-defined I51.9 descriptions of heart disease), code I13.-</p>				
Add text	<p>I50. (Heart failure), code I13.0 I51.4 (Complications and ill-defined I51.9 descriptions of heart disease), code I13.-</p>				

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Delete text	<p>when reported as the originating antecedent cause of:</p> <p>I50. (Heart failure), code I13.0 I51.4 (Complications and ill-defined I51.9 descriptions of heart disease), code I13.-</p> <p>I13.- Hypertensive heart and renal disease</p> <p>with mention of:</p> <p>I20-I25 (Ischaemic heart disease), code I20-I25</p> <p>...</p> <p>I51.4- Complications and ill-defined descriptions of heart I51.9 disease</p> <p>with mention of:</p> <p>B57.- (Chagas' disease), code B57.- I20-I25 (Ischaemic heart diseases), code I20-I25</p> <p>I50.- Heart failure I51.9 Heart disease, unspecified</p> <p>with mention of:</p>				
Add text	<p><u>I10 (Essential (primary) hypertension), code</u> <u>I11.0</u></p> <p><u>I11.- (Hypertensive heart disease), code I11.0</u> <u>I12.0 (Hypertensive renal disease with renal</u> <u>failure), code I13.2</u></p> <p><u>I12.9 (Hypertensive renal disease without renal</u> <u>failure), code I13.0</u></p> <p><u>I13.0 (Hypertensive heart and renal disease with</u> <u>(congestive) heart failure), code I13.0</u></p> <p><u>I13.1 (Hypertensive heart and renal disease with</u> <u>renal failure), code I13.2</u></p>				

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<u>I13.2 (Hypertensive heart and renal disease with both (congestive) heart failure and renal failure), code I13.2</u> <u>I13.9 (Hypertensive heart and renal disease with renal failure, unspecified), code I13.0</u> M41.- (Scoliosis), code I27.1				
Page 59	4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding	MRG 1725	October 2010	Minor	January 2012
Add note	... <u>F80.- Specific developmental disorders of speech and language</u> <u>F81.- Specific developmental disorders of scholastic skills</u> Not to be used if underlying physical condition is known				
Add note	4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding Add note on A51, early syphilis: <u>A51.- Early syphilis</u> <i>with mention of:</i> <u>A52.- (Late syphilis), code A52.-</u>	MRG 1797	October 2011	Minor	January 2013
Add text	<u>F10-F19 Mental and behavioural disorders due to psychoactive substance use</u> ... <u>Fourth character .2 (Dependence syndrome) with mention of Withdrawal state with delirium (.4), code F10-F19 with fourth character .4</u> <u>Fourth character .2 (Dependence syndrome) with mention of Amnesic syndrome (.6), code F10-F19 with fourth character .6</u> <u>Fourth character .2 (Dependence syndrome) with mention of Residual and late-onset psychotic disorder (.7), code F10-F19 with fourth character .7</u>				
Delete note	... <u>F10.2— Dependence syndrome due to use of alcohol</u> -				

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Add note	<p>with mention of:</p> <p>- F10.4, F10.6, F10.7 Withdrawal state with delirium, Amnesic syndrome, Residual and late onset psychotic disorder, code F10.4, F10.6, F10.7</p> <p><u>L89.- Decubitus ulcer and pressure area</u></p> <p><u>When reported as the originating antecedent cause of:</u></p> <p><u>L89.- (Decubitus ulcer and pressure area) of a more advanced stage, code L89.- with the fourth character for the more advanced stage.</u></p> <p>...</p> <p><u>N18.- Chronic kidney disease</u> <u>when reported as the originating antecedent cause of:</u></p> <p><u>N18.- (Chronic kidney disease) of a more advanced stage, code N18.- with the fourth character for the more advanced stage</u></p>				
Delete text	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p>S02.— Fracture of skull and facial bones</p> <p>- When more than one site is mentioned, code to multiple fractures involving skull and facial bones, S02.7</p> <p>S06.— Intracranial injury</p> <p>- When a fracture of the skull or facial bones is associated with an intracranial injury, priority should be given to the fracture.</p> <p>- with mention of:</p> <p>- S02.— (Fracture of skull or facial bones), code S02.—</p>	MRG 1219	October 2011	Major	January 2013
Correction of a typographical error	<p>Section 4.1.11</p> <p>E10-E14 Diabetes mellitus</p>	MRG 1784	October 2011	Minor	January 2013

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p><i>when reported as the originating antecedent cause of</i></p> <p>M79.2 ... (Neuralgia and neuritis, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .6.4</p>				
Revise text	<p>4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding</p> <p>E10-E14 Diabetes mellitus</p> <p><i>when reported as the originating antecedent cause with mention of:</i></p> <p>E87.2 (Acidosis), code E10-E14 with fourth character .1</p> <p>E88.8 (Other specified metabolic disorders), code E10-E14 with fourth character .1</p> <p>G58.- (Other mononeuropathies), code E10-E14 with fourth character .4</p> <p>G62.9 (Polyneuropathy, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .4</p> <p>G64 (Other disorders of peripheral nervous system), code E10-E14 with fourth character .4</p> <p>G70.9 (Myoneural disorder, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .4</p> <p>G71.8 (Other primary disorders of muscles), code E10-E14 with fourth character .4</p> <p>G90.9 (Disorder of autonomic nervous system, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .4</p> <p>H20.9 (Iridocyclitis), code E10-E14 with fourth character .3</p> <p>H26.9 (Cataract, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .3</p> <p>H30.9 (Chorioretinal inflammation, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .3</p> <p>H34 (Retinal vascular occlusions), code E10-E14 with fourth character .3</p> <p>H35.0 (Background retinopathy and retinal vascular changes), code E10-E14 with fourth character .3</p> <p>H35.2 (Other proliferative retinopathy), code E10-E14 with fourth character .3</p> <p>H35.6 (Retinal haemorrhage), code E10-E14 with fourth character .3</p> <p>H35.9 (Retinal disorder, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .3</p> <p>H49.9 (Paralytic strabismus, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .3</p> <p>H54 (Blindness and low vision), code E10-E14 with fourth character .3</p> <p>I70.2 (Atherosclerosis of arteries of extremities), code E10-E14 with fourth character .5</p> <p>I73.9 (Peripheral vascular disease, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .5</p> <p>I99 (Other and unspecified disorders of circulatory system), if angiopathy, code E10-E14 with fourth character .5</p> <p>L30.9 (Dermatitis, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .6</p> <p>L92.1 (Necrobiosis lipoidica, not elsewhere classified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .6</p>	MRG 1864	October 2011	Minor	January 2013

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p><u>L97</u> (Ulcer of lower limb), code E10-E14 with fourth character .5</p> <p>M13.9 (Arthritis, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .6</p> <p>M79.2 (Neuralgia and neuritis, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .4</p> <p>M89.9 (Disorder of bone, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .6</p> <p>N03-N05 (Nephrotic syndrome), code E10-E14 with fourth character .2</p> <p>N18.- (Chronic kidney disease), code E10-E14 with fourth character .2</p> <p>N19 (Unspecified kidney failure), code E10-E14 with fourth character .2</p> <p>N26 (Unspecified contracted kidney), code E10-E14 with fourth character .2</p> <p>N28.9 (Disorder of kidney and ureter, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .2</p> <p>N39.0 (Urinary tract infection, site not specified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .6</p> <p>N39.1 (Persistent proteinuria, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .2</p> <p>R02 (Gangrene, not elsewhere classified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .5</p> <p>R40.2 (Coma, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .0</p> <p>R79.8 (Other specified abnormal findings of blood chemistry), if acetonemia, azotemia, and related conditions, code E10-E14 with fourth character .1</p> <p>Any of above in combination, code E10-E14 with fourth character .7</p> <p><i>when reported as the originating antecedent cause of:</i></p> <p><u>E15</u> (Non-diabetic hypoglycaemic coma; for unspecified hypoglycemic coma only), code E10-E14 with fourth character .0</p> <p><u>G70.9</u> (Myoneural disorder, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .4</p> <p><u>G98</u> (Other disorders of the nervous system, not elsewhere classified; except Charcot's arthropathy, non-syphilitic), code E10-E14 with fourth character .4</p> <p><u>G98</u> (Other disorders of the nervous system, not elsewhere classified; if Charcot's arthropathy, non-syphilitic), code E10-E14 with fourth character .6</p> <p><u>H49.9</u> (Paralytic strabismus, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .3</p> <p><u>H54</u> (Blindness and low vision), code E10-E14 with fourth character .3</p> <p><u>I99</u> (Other and unspecified disorders of circulatory system); for Angiopathy only, code E10-E14 with fourth character .5</p> <p><u>K31.8</u> (Other specified diseases of stomach and duodenum; for gastroparesis only), code E10-E14 with fourth character .4</p> <p><u>L30.9</u> (Dermatitis, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .6</p> <p><u>L98.4</u> (chronic ulcer of skin, not elsewhere classified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .5</p>				

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction		Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date																											
		M89.9 (Disorder of bone, unspecified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .6 N39.0 (Urinary tract infection, site not specified), code E10-E14 with fourth character .6 Any of above in combination , code E10- E14 with fourth character .7																															
Add text		4.1.11 Notes for use in underlying cause mortality coding <u>Q44.6 Cystic disease of liver with mention of: Q61.1-Q61.3 (Polycystic kidney disease), code Q61.1-Q61.3</u>	MRG 1904	October 2012	Minor	January 2014																											
Page 62 Add		4.1.12 Summary of linkages by code number <i>Table 1. Summary of linkages by code number</i> <table><tr><td>Selected cause</td><td>As cause of:</td><td>Resulting linked code</td></tr><tr><td>D50-D59</td><td>B20-B24</td><td>B20-B24</td></tr></table>	Selected cause	As cause of:	Resulting linked code	D50-D59	B20-B24	B20-B24	Mortality Reference Group 0108	October 2001	Major	January 2003																					
Selected cause	As cause of:	Resulting linked code																															
D50-D59	B20-B24	B20-B24																															
Page 62 Add codes Page 65 Delete codes		4.1.12 Summary of linkages by code number <i>Table 1. Summary of linkages by code number</i> <table><tr><td>Selected cause:</td><td>With mention of:</td><td>Resulting linked code</td></tr><tr><td>E86</td><td>A00-A09</td><td>A00-A09</td></tr><tr><td>F10-F19</td><td>X40-X49</td><td>X40-X49</td></tr><tr><td>F10-F19</td><td>X60-X69</td><td>X60-X69</td></tr><tr><td>F10-F19</td><td>X85-X90</td><td>X85-X90</td></tr><tr><td>F10-F19</td><td>Y10-Y19</td><td>Y10-Y19</td></tr></table> <table><tr><td>T36 T50</td><td>F10 F19 (F1x.2)</td><td>F10 F19 (F1x.2)</td></tr><tr><td>X40 X49 }</td><td>F10 F19 (F1x.2)</td><td>F10 F19 (F1x.2)</td></tr><tr><td>Y10 Y15 }</td><td>F10 F19 (F1x.2)</td><td>F10 F19 (F1x.2)</td></tr></table>	Selected cause:	With mention of:	Resulting linked code	E86	A00-A09	A00-A09	F10-F19	X40-X49	X40-X49	F10-F19	X60-X69	X60-X69	F10-F19	X85-X90	X85-X90	F10-F19	Y10-Y19	Y10-Y19	T36 T50	F10 F19 (F1x.2)	F10 F19 (F1x.2)	X40 X49 }	F10 F19 (F1x.2)	F10 F19 (F1x.2)	Y10 Y15 }	F10 F19 (F1x.2)	F10 F19 (F1x.2)	MRG 0117	October 2002	Major	January 2006
Selected cause:	With mention of:	Resulting linked code																															
E86	A00-A09	A00-A09																															
F10-F19	X40-X49	X40-X49																															
F10-F19	X60-X69	X60-X69																															
F10-F19	X85-X90	X85-X90																															
F10-F19	Y10-Y19	Y10-Y19																															
T36 T50	F10 F19 (F1x.2)	F10 F19 (F1x.2)																															
X40 X49 }	F10 F19 (F1x.2)	F10 F19 (F1x.2)																															
Y10 Y15 }	F10 F19 (F1x.2)	F10 F19 (F1x.2)																															
Page 62 Add codes		4.1.12 Summary of linkages by code number <i>Table 1. Summary of linkages by code number</i> <table><tr><td>Selected cause:</td><td>With mention of:</td><td>As cause of:</td><td>Resulting linked code:</td></tr><tr><td colspan="4"></td></tr></table>	Selected cause:	With mention of:	As cause of:	Resulting linked code:					MRG 0160	October 2003	Minor	January 2005																			
Selected cause:	With mention of:	As cause of:	Resulting linked code:																														

Instruction		Instruction manual entries		Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	F10	<u>E24.4</u>	<u>E24.4</u>				
		<u>G31.2</u>	<u>G31.2</u>				
		<u>G62.1</u>	<u>G62.1</u>				
		<u>G72.1</u>	<u>G72.1</u>				
		<u>I42</u>	<u>I42.6</u>				
		<u>K29.2</u>	<u>K29.2</u>				
		<u>K70.-</u>	<u>K70.-</u>				
		<u>K85</u>	<u>K85</u>				
		<u>K86.0</u>	<u>K86.0</u>				
		<u>O35.4</u>	<u>O35.4</u>				
Add text p. 70	4.1.12 Summary of linkages by code number <i>Table 1. Summary of linkages by code number</i> Selected cause With mention of: As cause of: Resulting linked code F10.- K74.6 K70.3 K75.9 K70.1 K76.0 K70.0 K76.9 K70.9 K85.2 K85.2 K86.0 K86.0 O35.4 O35.4 F10.2 F10.4, F10.6, F10.7 F10.4, F10.6, F10.7 ... <u>K85.9</u> <u>F10.-</u> <u>K85.2</u>			MRG 1065	October 2006	Minor	January 2008
Add text Add codes p. 69	4.1.12 Summary of linkages by code number <i>Table 1. Summary of linkages by code number</i> <hr/> Selected cause With mention of: As cause of: Resulting lined code J43.- J40 J44.-			MRG 1035	October 2006	Major	January 2010

Instruction		Instruction manual entries		Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	...	J44.8-J44.9	J12-J18	J44.0			
			J20-J22	J44.0			
	J60-J64						
p. 64	4.1.12 Summary of linkages by code number			MRG 0338	October 2005	Major	January 2010
	Table 1. Summary of linkages by code number						
	Selected cause	With mention of:	As cause of:	Resulting linked code			
	I67.2	I60-I66		I60-I64			
			F03	F01.-			
			G20	G21.4			
			G21.9	G21.4			
Modify	I70.9	R02		I70.2			
			F03	F01.-			
			G20	G20 G21.4			
			G21.9	G21.4			
Revise codes:	4.1.12 Summary of linkages by code number			MRG 1142	October 2007	Major	January 2010
	Table 1. Summary of linkages by code number						
	Selected cause	With mention of:	As cause of:	Resulting linked code			
	E10-E14			E10-14 (E1x.1)			
		E87.2		E10-14 (E1x.1)			
		E88.8		E10-14 (E1x.1)			
		G58		E10-14 (E1x.4)			
		G62.9		E10-14 (E1x.4)			
		G64		E10-14 (E1x.4)			
		G70.9		E10-14 (E1x.4)			
		G71.8		E10-14 (E1x.4)			
		G90.9		E10-14 (E1x.4)			
		H20.9		E10-14 (E1x.3)			
		H26.9		E10-14 (E1x.3)			
		H30.9		E10-14 (E1x.3)			
		H34		E10-14 (E1x.3)			

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<u>H35.0</u> <u>E10-14 (E1x.3)</u> <u>H35.2</u> <u>E10-14 (E1x.3)</u> <u>H35.6</u> <u>E10-14 (E1x.3)</u> <u>H35.9</u> <u>E10-14 (E1x.3)</u> <u>H49.9</u> <u>E10-14 (E1x.3)</u> <u>H54</u> <u>E10-14 (E1x.3)</u> <u>I73.9</u> <u>E10-14 (E1x.5)</u> <u>I70.2</u> <u>E10-14 (E1x.5)</u> <u>L30.9</u> <u>E10-14 (E1x.6)</u> <u>L92.1</u> <u>E10-14 (E1x.6)</u> <u>M13.9</u> <u>E10-14 (E1x.6)</u> <u>M79.2</u> <u>E10-14 (E1x.4)</u> <u>M89.9</u> <u>E10-14 (E1x.6)</u> <u>N03- N05</u> <u>E10-14 (E1x.2)</u> <u>N18.- N18.9</u> <u>E10-14 (E1x.2)</u> <u>N19</u> <u>E10-14 (E1x.2)</u> <u>N26</u> <u>E10-14 (E1x.2)</u> <u>N28.9</u> <u>E10-14 (E1x.2)</u> <u>N39.0</u> <u>E10-14 (E1x.6)</u> <u>N39.1</u> <u>E10-14 (E1x.2)</u> <u>R02</u> <u>E10-14 (E1x.5)</u> <u>R40.2</u> <u>E10-14 (E1x.0)</u>				
Page 69 Add	4.1.12 Summary of linkages by code number <i>Table 1. Summary of linkages by code number</i> Selected cause With mention of: As cause of: Resulting linked code <div> <u>O64</u> <u>O65.-</u> <u>O65.-</u> <u>R57.2</u> <u>A00-B99</u> <u>A00-B99</u> <u>R65.0-.1</u> <u>A00-B99</u> <u>A00-B99</u> <u>S06.-</u> <u>S02.-</u> <u>S02.-</u> </div>	MbRG 1240)	2008	Major	January 2010
Modify p. 76	4.1.12 Summary of linkages by code number <i>Table 1. Summary of linkages by code number</i> Page 86 – revise codes <hr/> J00 }	URC (Proposed and ratified at meeting in Tokyo Oct'05)	October 2005	Major	October 2005

Instruction		Instruction manual entries		Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Revise code	J06.- }	G03.8 G06.0 H65-H66 H70.- <u>J09-J18</u> J20-J21 J40-J42 J44.- N00.-	G03.8 G06.0 H65-H66 H70.- <u>J09-J18</u> J20-J21 J40-J42 J44.- N00.-				
	<hr/>						
Delete line	4.1.12 Summary of linkages by code number [Table 1. Summary of linkages by code number] “S06. S02. S02.”			MRG 1219	October 2011	Major	January 2013
Revise codes	4.1.12 Summary of linkages by code number <i>Table 1. Summary of linkages by code number</i> Selected cause With mention of: As cause of: Resulting linked code E10-E14 <u>E15</u> <u>E10-E14(E1x.0)</u> E87.2 E10-E14(E1x.1) E88.8 E10-E14(E1x.1) G58.- E10-E14(E1x.4) G62.9 E10-E14(E1x.4) G64 E10-E14(E1x.4) G70.9 <u>G70.9</u> E10-E14(E1x.4) G71.8 E10-E14(E1x.4) G90.9 E10-E14(E1x.4) <u>G98 (except Charcot’s</u> <u>E10-E14(E1x.4)</u> <u>arthopathy, non-syphilitic)</u>			MRG 1864	October 2011		January 2013

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction	Instruction manual entries		Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<u>G98 (if Charcot's arthopathy, non-syphilitic)</u>	<u>E10-E14(E1x.6)</u>				
	H20.9	E10-E14(E1x.3)				
	H26.9	E10-E14(E1x.3)				
	H30.9	E10-E14(E1x.3)				
	H34	E10-E14(E1x.3)				
	H35.0	E10-E14(E1x.3)				
	H35.2	E10-E14(E1x.3)				
	H35.6	E10-E14(E1x.3)				
	H35.9	E10-E14(E1x.3)				
	H49.9 <u>H49.9</u>	E10-E14(E1x.3)				
	H54 <u>H54</u>	E10-E14(E1x.3)				
	I70.2	E10-E14(E1x.5)				
	I73.9	E10-E14(E1x.5)				
	I99 <u>I99</u>	E10-E14(E1x.5)				
		<u>K31.8</u>				
	L30.9 <u>L30.9</u>	E10-E14(E1x.6)				
	L92.1	E10-E14(E1x.6)				
	<u>L97</u>	<u>E10-E14(E1x.5)</u>				
		<u>L98.4</u>				
	M13.9	E10-E14(E1x.6)				
	M79.2	E10-E14(E1x.4)				
	M89.9 <u>M89.9</u>	E10-E14(E1x.6)				
	N03-N05	E10-E14(E1x.2)				
	N18.-	E10-E14(E1x.2)				
	N19	E10-E14(E1x.2)				
	N26	E10-E14(E1x.2)				
	N28.9	E10-E14(E1x.2)				
	N39.0 <u>N39.0</u>	E10-E14(E1x.6)				
	N39.1	E10-E14(E1x.2)				
	R02	E10-E14(E1x.5)				

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	R40.2 E10-E14(E1x.0) R79.8 E10-E14(E1x.1)				
Page 66 Add codes to existing table	4.1.12 Summary of linkages by code number <i>Table 2. Summary of codes not to be used in underlying cause mortality coding</i> Codes not to be used for underlying cause mortality coding (code to item in parentheses; if no code is indicated, code to R99) <u>P70.3 – P72.0 (code to P96.9)</u> <u>P72.2 – P74 (code to P96.9)</u>	MRG 0120	October 2002	Minor	January 2004
Page 66 Add list of codes to existing table	4.1.12 Summary of linkages by code number <i>Table 2. Summary of codes not to be used in underlying cause mortality coding</i> Codes not to be used for underlying cause Mortality coding (code to item in parentheses; If no code is indicated, code to R99) <u>F10.0 (code to X45, X65, X85, or Y15)</u> <u>F11.0 (code to X42, X62, X85, or Y12)</u> <u>F12.0 (code to X42, X62, X85, or Y12)</u> <u>F13.0 (code to X41, X61, X85, or Y11)</u> <u>F14.0 (code to X42, X62, X85, or Y12)</u> <u>F15.0 (code to X41, X61, X85, or Y11)</u> <u>F16.0 (code to X42, X62, X85, or Y12)</u> <u>F17.0 (code to X49, X69, X89, or Y19)</u> <u>F18.0 (code to X46, X66, X89, or Y16)</u> <u>F19.0 (code to X40-X49, X60-X69, X85-X90, or Y10-Y19)</u>	MRG 0116	October 2002	Major	January 2006
Page 66	4.1.12 Summary of linkages by code number <i>Table 2. Summary of codes not to be used in underlying cause mortality coding^a</i> Codes not to be used for underlying cause mortality coding (code to item in parentheses; if no code is indicated, Not to be used if the underlying cause is known	MRG 0261	October 2004	Major	January 2006

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Add text to table	code to R99) I23.- (code to I21 or I22) H90-H91 I24.0 (code to I21 or I22) N46 <u>I25.2</u> (code to I25.8) N97.- I65.- (code to I63)				
Page 66	4.1.12 Summary of linkages by code number <i>Table 2 Summary of codes not to be used in underlying cause mortality coding</i> <hr/> Codes not to be used for underlying cause mortality coding (code to item in parentheses; if no code is indicated, code to R99) Not to be used if the underlying cause is known	MRG 0210	October 2004	Major	January 2006
Delete code Add code	... H95.- I15.- I23.- (code to I21 or I22) G83.- H54 H90-91 <u>I15.-</u>				
p. 70	4.1.12 Summary of linkages by code number <i>Table 2. Summary of codes not to be used in underlying cause mortality coding ^a</i> Codes not to be used for underlying cause mortality coding (code to item in parentheses; if no code is indicated, code to R99) Not to be used if the underlying cause is known	MRG 1066	October 2007	Major	January 2010
Add codes:	B95-B97 <u>F03</u> -F09 <u>C97</u> F70-F79 E89.- G81.- F10.0 (code to X45, X65, X85, or Y15) G82.- F11.0 (code to X42, X62, X85, or Y12)				
Page 70	4.1.12 Summary of linkages by code number	MbRG	October 2008	Major	January

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date																																																																																								
Add	<p><i>Table 2. Summary of codes not to be used in underlying cause mortality coding</i></p> <p>...</p> <p>P72.2-P74 (code to P96.9)</p> <p><u>R57.2</u> (code to A41.9)</p> <p><u>R65.0-.1</u> (code to A41.9)</p> <p>R69.- (code to R95-R99)</p>	1240			2010																																																																																								
Make the following changes to Volume 2.	<p>4.1.12 Summary of linkages by code number</p> <p>Table 1. Summary of linkages by code number</p> <table><thead><tr><th>Selected cause</th><th>With mention of:</th><th>As cause of:</th><th>Resulting Linked Code</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>I10</td><td>I20-I25</td><td></td><td>I20-I25</td></tr><tr><td></td><td><u>I50.-</u></td><td></td><td><u>I11.0</u></td></tr><tr><td></td><td><u>I51.4-I51.9</u></td><td></td><td><u>I11.-</u></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td><u>I50.-</u></td><td><u>I11.0</u></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td><u>I51.4 I51.9</u></td><td><u>I11.-</u></td></tr><tr><td>I12.-</td><td>I20-I25</td><td></td><td>I20-I25</td></tr><tr><td></td><td><u>I50.-</u></td><td></td><td><u>I13.0</u></td></tr><tr><td></td><td><u>I51.4-I51.9</u></td><td></td><td><u>I13.-</u></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td><u>I50.-</u></td><td><u>I13.0</u></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td><u>I51.4 I51.9</u></td><td><u>I13.-</u></td></tr><tr><td>I50.-</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>I51.9</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td><u>I10</u></td><td></td><td><u>I11.0</u></td></tr><tr><td></td><td><u>I11.-</u></td><td></td><td><u>I11.0</u></td></tr><tr><td></td><td><u>I12.0</u></td><td></td><td><u>I13.2</u></td></tr><tr><td></td><td><u>I12.9</u></td><td></td><td><u>I13.0</u></td></tr><tr><td></td><td><u>I13.0</u></td><td></td><td><u>I13.0</u></td></tr><tr><td></td><td><u>I13.1</u></td><td></td><td><u>I13.2</u></td></tr><tr><td></td><td><u>I13.2</u></td><td></td><td><u>I13.2</u></td></tr><tr><td></td><td><u>I13.9</u></td><td></td><td><u>I13.0</u></td></tr><tr><td></td><td><u>M41</u></td><td></td><td><u>I27.1</u></td></tr></tbody></table>	Selected cause	With mention of:	As cause of:	Resulting Linked Code	I10	I20-I25		I20-I25		<u>I50.-</u>		<u>I11.0</u>		<u>I51.4-I51.9</u>		<u>I11.-</u>			<u>I50.-</u>	<u>I11.0</u>			<u>I51.4 I51.9</u>	<u>I11.-</u>	I12.-	I20-I25		I20-I25		<u>I50.-</u>		<u>I13.0</u>		<u>I51.4-I51.9</u>		<u>I13.-</u>			<u>I50.-</u>	<u>I13.0</u>			<u>I51.4 I51.9</u>	<u>I13.-</u>	I50.-				I51.9					<u>I10</u>		<u>I11.0</u>		<u>I11.-</u>		<u>I11.0</u>		<u>I12.0</u>		<u>I13.2</u>		<u>I12.9</u>		<u>I13.0</u>		<u>I13.0</u>		<u>I13.0</u>		<u>I13.1</u>		<u>I13.2</u>		<u>I13.2</u>		<u>I13.2</u>		<u>I13.9</u>		<u>I13.0</u>		<u>M41</u>		<u>I27.1</u>	MRG 1554	October 2009	Major	January 2013
Selected cause	With mention of:	As cause of:	Resulting Linked Code																																																																																										
I10	I20-I25		I20-I25																																																																																										
	<u>I50.-</u>		<u>I11.0</u>																																																																																										
	<u>I51.4-I51.9</u>		<u>I11.-</u>																																																																																										
		<u>I50.-</u>	<u>I11.0</u>																																																																																										
		<u>I51.4 I51.9</u>	<u>I11.-</u>																																																																																										
I12.-	I20-I25		I20-I25																																																																																										
	<u>I50.-</u>		<u>I13.0</u>																																																																																										
	<u>I51.4-I51.9</u>		<u>I13.-</u>																																																																																										
		<u>I50.-</u>	<u>I13.0</u>																																																																																										
		<u>I51.4 I51.9</u>	<u>I13.-</u>																																																																																										
I50.-																																																																																													
I51.9																																																																																													
	<u>I10</u>		<u>I11.0</u>																																																																																										
	<u>I11.-</u>		<u>I11.0</u>																																																																																										
	<u>I12.0</u>		<u>I13.2</u>																																																																																										
	<u>I12.9</u>		<u>I13.0</u>																																																																																										
	<u>I13.0</u>		<u>I13.0</u>																																																																																										
	<u>I13.1</u>		<u>I13.2</u>																																																																																										
	<u>I13.2</u>		<u>I13.2</u>																																																																																										
	<u>I13.9</u>		<u>I13.0</u>																																																																																										
	<u>M41</u>		<u>I27.1</u>																																																																																										
	<p>4.1.12 Summary of linkages by code number</p> <p>...</p> <p><i>Table 2. Summary of codes not to be used in underlying cause mortality coding^a</i></p>	Canada 1603	October 2009	Minor	January 2011																																																																																								

Instruction		Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Add codes		Codes not to be used for underlying cause mortality coding (code to item in parentheses; if no code is indicated, code to R99) B95-B97 <u>C77-C79</u> (code to C80.-) <u>C97</u> (code to C00-C76, C81-C96) E89.- F03-F09 F70 – F79				
Add code range		4.1.12 Summary of linkages by code number ... <i>Table 2. Summary of codes not to be used in underlying cause mortality coding</i> Codes not to be used for underlying cause mortality coding (code to item in parentheses; if no code is indicated code to R99) ... O08.- (code to O00-O07)	MRG 1557	October 2009	Major	January 2013
Page 67		The following section lists the changes to note 4.2.2 Interpretation of “highly improbable”. To assist users of the classification, the note has been reproduced in its entirety, with the relevant changes, for every year that a change has been effected. The reproduced notes appear at the end of the changes for 4.2.2.				
Page 67		4.2.2 Interpretation of “highly improbable” ...As a guide to the acceptability of sequences in the application of the General Principle and the selection rules, the following relationships should be regarded as “highly improbable”: (a) an infectious or parasitic disease (A00-B99) reported as “due to” any disease outside this chapter, except that: □ any infectious disease may be accepted as “due to” disorders of the immune mechanism such as human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease or AIDS; immunosuppression by chemicals (chemotherapy) and radiation. Any infectious disease classified to A00-B19 or B25-B64 reported as “due to” a malignant neoplasm will also be an acceptable sequence.	Mortality Reference Group 0051	October 2000	Minor	January 2002
Replace existing text with this revised rule						
p. 67		4.2.2 Interpretation of “highly improbable”	MRG	October 2005	Major	January

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Delete text	<p>The expression “highly improbable” has been used since the Sixth Revision of the ICD to indicate an unacceptable causal relationship. As a guide to the acceptability of sequences in the application of the General Principle and the selection rules, the following relationships should be regarded as “highly improbable”:</p> <p>(a) any infectious disease may be accepted as “due to” disorders of the immune mechanism such as human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease or AIDS;</p> <p>(b) an infectious or parasitic disease (A00-B99) reported as “due to” any disease outside this chapter, except that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • diarrhoea and gastroenteritis of presumed infectious origin (A09) • septicaemia (A40-A41)) may be accepted • erysipelas (A46)) as “due to” any • gas gangrene (A48.0)) disease • Vincent’s angina (A69.1)) • mycoses (B35-B49)) • any infectious disease may be accepted as “due to” immunosuppression by chemicals (chemotherapy) and radiation; • any infectious disease classified to A00-B19 or B25-B64 reported as “due to” a malignant neoplasm will also be an acceptable sequence; • varicella and zoster infections (B01-B02) may be accepted as “due to” diabetes, tuberculosis and lymphoproliferative neoplasms; 	0318			2010
Add text	<p>4.2.2 Highly improbable and acceptable sequences</p> <p><u>A. Highly improbable sequences</u></p> <p><u>The expression “highly improbable” has been used since the Sixth Revision of the ICD to indicate an unacceptable causal relationship. As a guide to the acceptability of sequences in the application of the General Principle and the selection rules, the following relationships should be regarded as “highly improbable”:</u></p> <p><u>(a) The following infectious diseases should not be accepted as “due to” any other disease or condition, except when reported as “due to” human</u></p>				

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p><u>immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease, malignant neoplasms and conditions impairing the immune system.</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>A01-A03 (Typhoid and paratyphoid fevers, other salmonella infections, shigellosis)</u> • <u>A15-A19 (Tuberculosis)</u> <p><u>The following infectious and parasitic diseases should not be accepted as “due to” any other disease or condition (not even HIV/AIDS, malignant neoplasms or immunosuppression)</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>A00 (Cholera)</u> • <u>A05.1 (Botulism)</u> • <u>A20-A23 (Plague, tularaemia, anthrax, brucellosis)</u> • <u>A27 (Leptospirosis)</u> • <u>A33-A39 (Tetanus, diphtheria, whooping cough, scarlet fever, meningococcal disease)</u> • <u>A70 (Diseases due to Chlamydia psittaci)</u> • <u>A75-A79 (Rickettsioses)</u> • <u>A80 (Acute poliomyelitis)</u> • <u>A81.0 Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease</u> • <u>A81.1 Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis</u> • <u>A82-A86 (Rabies, mosquito-borne viral encephalitis, tick-borne viral encephalitis, unspecified viral encephalitis)</u> • <u>A91-A92 (Dengue haemorrhagic and other mosquito-borne viral fevers)</u> • <u>A95 (Yellow fever)</u> • <u>A96.0-A96.2 (Junin and Machupo haemorrhagic fevers, Lassa fever)</u> • <u>A98 (Other viral haemorrhagic fevers)</u> • <u>B03-B06 (Smallpox, monkeypox, measles, rubella)</u> • <u>B16-B17.1 (Acute hepatitis B and C)</u> • <u>B26 (Mumps)</u> • <u>B50-B57 (Malaria, leishmaniasis, Chagas’ disease)</u> • <u>B90 (Sequelae of tuberculosis)</u> • <u>B91 (Sequelae of poliomyelitis)</u> • <u>B92 (Sequelae of leprosy)</u> • <u>B94.0 (Sequelae of trachoma)</u> • <u>B94.1 (Sequelae of viral encephalitis)</u> • <u>B94.2 (Sequelae of viral hepatitis)</u> • <u>Other emerging diseases reportable to WHO (e.g., U04 SARS, J09 Avian</u> 				

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Delete text and Add text	<u>flu)</u>				
Delete text and Add text	<p>(e) (b) a malignant neoplasm reported should not be accepted as “due to” any other disease, except human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) disease;</p> <p>(d) (c) haemophilia (D66, D67, D68.0-D68.2) reported should not be accepted as “due to” any other disease;</p> <p>(e) (d) diabetes (E10-E14) reported should not be accepted as “due to” any other disease except:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • haemochromatosis (E83.1), • diseases of pancreas (K85-K86), • pancreatic neoplasms (C25.-, D13.6, D13.7, D37.7), • malnutrition (E40-E46); <p>(f) (e) rheumatic fever (I00-I02) or rheumatic heart disease (I05-I09) reported should not be accepted as “due to” any disease other than scarlet fever (A38), streptococcal septicaemia (A40.0-), streptococcal sore throat (J02.0) and acute tonsillitis (J03.-);</p> <p>(e) (f) any hypertensive conditions reported should not be accepted as “due to” any neoplasm except:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • endocrine neoplasms, • renal neoplasms, • carcinoid tumours; <p>(h) (g) chronic ischaemic heart disease (I20, I25) reported should not be accepted as “due to” any neoplasm;</p> <p>(i) (h)(1) cerebrovascular diseases (I60-I69) reported should not be accepted as “due to” a disease of the digestive system (K00-K92),</p> <p>(2) cerebral infarction due to thrombosis of precerebral arteries (I63.0)</p> <p>cerebral infarction due to unspecified occlusion of precerebral arteries (I63.2)</p> <p>cerebral infarction due to thrombosis of cerebral arteries (I63.3)</p> <p>cerebral infarction due to unspecified occlusion of cerebral arteries (I63.5)</p> <p>cerebral infarction due to cerebral venous thrombosis, nonpyogenic (I63.6)</p> <p>other cerebral infarction (I63.8)</p> <p>cerebral infarction, unspecified (I63.9)</p> <p>stroke, not specified as haemorrhage or infarction (I64)</p> <p>other cerebrovascular diseases (I67)</p> <p>sequelae of stroke, not specified as haemorrhage or infarction (I69.4)</p> <p>sequelae of other and unspecified cerebrovascular diseases (I69.8)</p> <p>reported should not be accepted as “due to” endocarditis (I05-I08, I09.1, I33-I38),</p> <p>(3) occlusion and stenosis of precerebral arteries, not resulting in cerebral</p>				
Delete text and Add text					

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
<p>Delete text and Add text</p> <p>Delete text and Add text</p> <p>Delete text and Add text</p> <p>Delete text and Add text</p> <p>Delete text and Add text</p> <p>Delete text and Add text</p> <p>Delete text and Add text</p>	<p>infarction (I65), <i>except</i> embolism occlusion and stenosis of cerebral arteries, not resulting in cerebral infarction (I66), <i>except</i> embolism sequelae of cerebral infarction (I69.3), <i>except</i> embolism reported <u>should not be accepted</u> as “due to” endocarditis (I05-I08, I09.1, I33-I38);</p> <p>⊕ (i) any condition described as arteriosclerotic [atherosclerotic] reported <u>should not be accepted</u> as “due to” any neoplasm;</p> <p>⊕ (j) influenza (J10-J11) reported <u>should not be accepted</u> as “due to” any other disease;</p> <p>⊕ (k) a congenital anomaly (Q00-Q99) reported <u>should not be accepted</u> as “due to” any other disease of the individual, including immaturity <u>except for:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • a congenital anomaly should be accepted as “due to” a chromosome abnormality or a congenital malformation syndrome, • pulmonary hypoplasia should be accepted as “due to” a congenital anomaly; <p>⊕ (l) a condition of stated date of onset “X” reported <u>should not be accepted</u> as “due to” a condition of stated date of onset “Y”, when “X” predates “Y” (but see also Example 5 in section 4.1.6);</p> <p>⊕ (m) accidents (V01-X59) reported <u>should not be accepted</u> as due to any other cause outside this chapter except:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) any accident (V01-X59) reported <u>should be accepted</u> as due to epilepsy (G40-G41), (2) a fall (W00-W19) due to a disorder of bone density (M80-M85), (3) a fall (W00-W19) due to a (pathological) fracture caused by a disorder of bone density, (4) asphyxia reported <u>should be accepted</u> as due to aspiration of mucus, blood (W80) or vomitus (W78) as a result of disease conditions, (5) aspiration of food (liquid or solid) of any kind (W79) reported <u>should be accepted</u> as due to a disease which affects the ability to swallow; <p>⊕ (n) suicide (X60-X84) reported <u>should not be accepted</u> as “due to” any other cause.</p> <p>The above list does not cover all “highly improbable” sequences, but in other cases, the General Principle should be followed unless otherwise indicated.</p> <p>B. Acceptable sequences</p>				

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p>The following are acceptable sequences:</p> <p>(a) infectious diseases other than those noted in 4.2.2 A.(a) reported as "due to" other conditions;</p> <p>(b) The following infectious diseases when reported as "due to" human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease, malignant neoplasms and conditions impairing the immune system.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A01-A03 (Typhoid and paratyphoid fevers, other salmonella infections, shigellosis) • A15-A19 (Tuberculosis) <p>(c) a malignant neoplasm reported as "due to" human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) disease;</p> <p>(d) diabetes (E10-E14) reported as "due to":</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • haemochromatosis (E83.1), • diseases of pancreas (K85-K86), • pancreatic neoplasms (C25.-, D13.6, D13.7, D37.7), • malnutrition (E40-E46); <p>(e) rheumatic fever (I00-I02) or rheumatic heart disease (I05-I09) reported as "due to" scarlet fever (A38), streptococcal septicaemia (A40.0-), streptococcal sore throat (J02.0) and acute tonsillitis (J03.-);</p> <p>(f) any hypertensive condition reported as "due to":</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • endocrine neoplasms, • renal neoplasms, • carcinoid tumours; <p>(g) occlusion and stenosis of precerebral arteries, not resulting in embolism occlusion and stenosis of cerebral arteries, not resulting in embolism sequelae of cerebral infarction (I69.3), embolism</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">reported as "due to" endocarditis (I05-I08, I09.1, I33-I38);</p> <p>(h)</p> <p>(1) a congenital anomaly reported as "due to" a chromosome abnormality or a congenital malformation syndrome,</p> <p>(2) pulmonary hypoplasia reported as "due to" a congenital anomaly;</p> <p>(i)</p> <p>(1) any accident (V01-X59) reported as due to epilepsy (G40-G41),</p> <p>(2) a fall (W00-W19) due to a disorder of bone density (M80-M85),</p> <p>(3) a fall (W00-W19) due to a (pathological) fracture caused by a disorder of bone density,</p> <p>(4) asphyxia reported as due to aspiration of mucus, blood (W80) or vomitus</p>				

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	<p>(W78) as a result of disease conditions, (5) aspiration of food (liquid or solid) of any kind (W79) reported as due to a disease which affects the ability to swallow; (j) Acute or terminal circulatory diseases reported as due to malignant neoplasm, diabetes or asthma should be accepted as possible sequences in Part I of the certificate. The following conditions are regarded as acute or terminal circulatory diseases:</p> <p>I21-I22 Acute myocardial infarction I24.- Other acute ischaemic heart diseases I26.- Pulmonary embolism I30.- Acute pericarditis I33.- Acute and subacute endocarditis I40.- Acute myocarditis I44.- Atrioventricular and left bundle-branch block I45.- Other conduction disorders I46.- Cardiac arrest I47.- Paroxysmal tachycardia I48 Atrial fibrillation and flutter I49.- Other cardiac arrhythmias I50.- Heart failure I51.8 Other ill-defined heart diseases I60-I68 Cerebrovascular diseases except I67.0-I67.5 and I67.9</p>				
Page 68 Add	<p>4.2.2 Interpretation of “highly improbable” ...As a guide to the acceptability of sequences in the application of the General Principle and the selection rules, the following relationships should be regarded as “highly improbable”: <u>(n) suicide (X60-X84) reported as “due to” any other cause.</u></p>	MRG 0050	October 2000	Major	January 2003
Page 68 Add	<p>4.2.2. Interpretation of “highly improbable” (l) a condition of stated date of onset “X” reported as “due to” a condition of stated due of onset “Y”, when “X” predates “Y” <u>(but see also Example 5 in section 4.1.6);</u></p>	MRG 0104	October 2001	Minor	January 2003
Page 68 Replace existing point	<p>4.2.2 Interpretation of “highly improbable” ...As a guide to the acceptability of sequences in the application of the General Principle and the selection rules, the following relationships should be regarded as “highly improbable”:</p>	MRG 0049	October 2001	Minor	January 2003

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
(m) with this revised rule	<p>(m) <u>accidents (V01-X59) reported as due to any cause outside this chapter except:</u></p> <p><u>(1) any accident (V01-X59) reported as due to epilepsy (G40-G41).</u></p> <p><u>(2) a fall (W00-W19) due to a disorder of bone density (M80-M85).</u></p> <p><u>(3) a fall (W00-W19) due to a (pathological) fracture caused by a disorder of bone density.</u></p> <p><u>(4) asphyxia reported as due to aspiration of mucus, blood (W80) or vomitus (W78) as a result of disease conditions.</u></p> <p><u>(5) aspiration of food (liquid or solid) of any kind (W79) reported as due to a disease which affects the ability to swallow;</u></p>				
<p>Page 67</p> <p>Add new item (a)</p> <p>Renumber existing item (a) to item (b) and revise as indicated</p> <p>Renumber the remaining existing items as appropriate</p>	<p>4.2.2 Interpretation of “highly improbable”</p> <p>The expression “highly improbable”...the following relationships should be regarded as “highly improbable”:</p> <p><u>(a) any infectious disease may be accepted as “due to” disorders of the immune mechanism such as human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease or AIDS;</u></p> <p><u>(b) an infectious or parasitic disease (A00-B99) reported as “due to” any disease outside this chapter, except that:</u> . any infectious disease may be accepted as “due to” disorders of the immune mechanism such as human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease or AIDS; immunosuppression by chemicals (chemotherapy) and radiation. Any infectious disease classified to A00-B19 or B25-B64 reported as “due to” a malignant neoplasm will also be an acceptable sequence.</p> <p><u>(c) a malignant neoplasm reported as “due to” any other disease, except human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease;</u></p> <p><u>(d) haemophilia..... (and so on....)</u></p>	MRG 0108	October 2001	Major	January 2003
Page 67	<p>4.2.2 Interpretation of “highly improbable”</p> <p>The expression “highly improbable” has been used since ... the following relationships should be regarded as “highly improbable”:</p> <p>(b) an infectious or parasitic disease (A00-B99) reported as “due to” any disease outside this chapter, except that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> diarrhoea and gastroenteritis of presumed infectious origin (A09)) 	MRG 0122	October 2002	Minor	January 2004

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
Delete text as indicated Add text as indicated Add text as indicated	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • septicaemia (A40-A41)) • erysipelas (A46)) may be accepted • gas gangrene (A48.0)) as “due to” • Vincent’s angina (A69.1)) any other • mycoses (B35-B49)) disease • any infectious disease may be accepted as “due to” immunosuppression by chemicals (chemotherapy) and radiation. Any infectious disease classified to A00-B19 or B25-B64 reported as “due to” a malignant neoplasm will also be an acceptable sequence; • <u>any infectious disease classified to A00-B19 or B25-B64 reported as “due to” a malignant neoplasm will also be an acceptable sequence</u> • varicella and zoster infections (B01-B02) may be accepted as “due to” diabetes, tuberculosis and lymphoproliferative neoplasms; 				
Page 68 Delete existing text and replace with the following text	<p>4.2.2 Interpretation of “highly improbable” ... the following relationships should be regarded as “highly improbable”: (i) any cerebrovascular disease (I60-I69) reported as “due to” a disease of the digestive system (K00-K92) or endocarditis (I05-I08, I09.1, I33-I38), except for cerebral embolism in I65-I66 or intracranial haemorrhage (I60-I62);</p> <p>(i) <u>(1) cerebrovascular diseases (I60-I69) reported as “due to” a disease of the digestive system (K00-K92),</u> <u>(2) cerebral infarction due to thrombosis of precerebral arteries (I63.0)</u> <u>cerebral infarction due to unspecified occlusion of precerebral arteries (I63.2)</u> <u>cerebral infarction due to thrombosis of cerebral arteries (I63.3)</u> <u>cerebral infarction due to unspecified occlusion of cerebral arteries (I63.5)</u> <u>cerebral infarction due to cerebral venous thrombosis, nonpyogenic (I63.6)</u> <u>other cerebral infarction (I63.8)</u> <u>cerebral infarction, unspecified (I63.9)</u> <u>stroke, not specified as haemorrhage or infarction (I64)</u> <u>other cerebrovascular diseases (I67)</u> <u>sequelae of stroke, not specified as haemorrhage or infarction (I69.4)</u> <u>sequelae of other and unspecified cerebrovascular diseases (I69.8)</u> <u>reported as “due to” endocarditis (I05-I08, I09.1, I33-I38),</u> <u>(3) occlusion and stenosis of precerebral arteries, not resulting in cerebral infarction (I65), except embolism</u></p>	MRG 0119	October 2002	Minor	January 2004

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date																						
	<u>occlusion and stenosis of cerebral arteries, not resulting in cerebral infarction (I66), except embolism</u> <u>sequelae of cerebral infarction (I69.3), except embolism</u> <u>reported as “due to” endocarditis (I05-I08, I09.1, I33-I38);</u>																										
Page 68 Revise text as shown	4.2.2 Interpretation of “highly improbable” ... the following relationships should be regarded as “highly improbable”: (I) a congenital anomaly (Q00-Q99) reported as “due to” any other disease of the individual, including immaturity ; except for: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <u>a congenital anomaly reported as “due to” a chromosome abnormality or a congenital malformation syndrome</u>• <u>pulmonary hypoplasia reported as “due to” a congenital anomaly;</u>	MRG 0118	October 2002	Major	January 2006																						
p. 68 Add appendix	(e) diabetes (E10-E14) reported as “due to” any other disease, except for conditions causing damage to the pancreas. Note: A list of such conditions is available from the WHO Web site. <u>Insert new material in an appendix to Volume 2:</u> <u>4.2.15 List of conditions that can cause diabetes</u> <u>List of the conditions that can cause diabetes</u> <u>Acceptable sequences for diabetes “due to” other diseases</u> <table><tr><td><u>Selected cause</u></td><td><u>As cause of</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>M35.9</u></td><td><u>E10, E14</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>E40-E46</u></td><td><u>E12, E14</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>B25.2</u></td><td><u>E13-E14</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>B26.3</u></td><td><u>E13-E14</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>C25</u></td><td><u>E13-E14</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>D13.6-D13.7</u></td><td><u>E13-E14</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>D35.0</u></td><td><u>E13 –E14</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>E05- E06</u></td><td><u>E13 –E14</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>E22.0</u></td><td><u>E13-E14</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>E24</u></td><td><u>E13 –E14</u></td></tr></table>	<u>Selected cause</u>	<u>As cause of</u>	<u>M35.9</u>	<u>E10, E14</u>	<u>E40-E46</u>	<u>E12, E14</u>	<u>B25.2</u>	<u>E13-E14</u>	<u>B26.3</u>	<u>E13-E14</u>	<u>C25</u>	<u>E13-E14</u>	<u>D13.6-D13.7</u>	<u>E13-E14</u>	<u>D35.0</u>	<u>E13 –E14</u>	<u>E05- E06</u>	<u>E13 –E14</u>	<u>E22.0</u>	<u>E13-E14</u>	<u>E24</u>	<u>E13 –E14</u>	MRG 0319	October 2005	Major	January 2010
<u>Selected cause</u>	<u>As cause of</u>																										
<u>M35.9</u>	<u>E10, E14</u>																										
<u>E40-E46</u>	<u>E12, E14</u>																										
<u>B25.2</u>	<u>E13-E14</u>																										
<u>B26.3</u>	<u>E13-E14</u>																										
<u>C25</u>	<u>E13-E14</u>																										
<u>D13.6-D13.7</u>	<u>E13-E14</u>																										
<u>D35.0</u>	<u>E13 –E14</u>																										
<u>E05- E06</u>	<u>E13 –E14</u>																										
<u>E22.0</u>	<u>E13-E14</u>																										
<u>E24</u>	<u>E13 –E14</u>																										

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Instruction		Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementati on date
	E80.0- E80.2	E13-E14				
	E83.1	E13-E14				
	E84	E13-E14				
	E89.1	E13-E14				
	F10.1-F10.2	E13-E14				
	G10	E13-E14				
	G11.1	E13-E14				
	G25.8	E13-E14				
	G71.1	E13-E14				
	K85	E13-E14				
	K86.0- K86.1	E13-E14				
	K86.8- K86.9	E13-E14				
	M35.9	E13-E14				
	O24.4	E13-E14				
	P35.0	E13-E14				
	Q87.1	E13-E14				
	Q90	E13-E14				
	Q96	E13-E14				
	Q98	E13-E14				
	Q99.8	E13-E14				
	S36.2	E13-E14				
	T37.3	E13-E14				
	T37.5	E13-E14				
	T38.0- T38.1	E13-E14				
	T42.0	E13-E14				
	T46.5	E13-E14				
	T46.7	E13-E14				
	T50.2	E13-E14				
	X41	E13-E14				
	X44	E13-E14				
	X61	E13-E14				
	X64	E13-E14				
	Y11	E13-E14				
	Y14	E13-E14				
	Y41.3	E13-E14				
	Y41.5	E13-E14				
	Y42.0- Y42.1	E13-E14				
	Y46.2	E13-E14				
	Y52.5	E13-E14				

**Note 4.2.2 Interpretation of “highly” improbable for implementation January 2002
(incorporates URC No.0051)**

4.2.2 Interpretation of “highly improbable”

The expression “highly improbable” has been used since the Sixth Revision of the ICD to indicate an unacceptable causal relationship. As a guide to the acceptability of sequences in the application of the General Principle and the selection rules, the following relationships should be regarded as “highly improbable”:

- (a) an infectious or parasitic disease (A00-B99) reported as “due to” any disease outside this chapter, except that:
 - diarrhoea and gastroenteritis of presumed infectious origin (A09))
 - septicaemia (A40-A41))
 - erysipelas (A46)) may be accepted as “due to”
 - gas gangrene (A48.0)) any other disease,
 - Vincent’s angina (A69.1))
 - mycoses (B35-B49))
 - any infectious disease may be accepted as “due to” disorders of the immune mechanism such as human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease or AIDS; immunosuppression by chemicals (chemotherapy) and radiation. Any infectious disease classified to A00-B19 or B25-B64 reported as “due to” a malignant neoplasm will also be an acceptable sequence,
 - varicella and zoster infections (B01-B02) may be accepted as “due to” diabetes, tuberculosis and lymphoproliferative neoplasms;
- (b) a malignant neoplasm reported as “due to” any other disease, except human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) disease;
- (c) haemophilia (D66, D67, D68.0-D68.2) reported as “due to” any other disease;
- (d) diabetes (E10-E14) reported as “due to” any other disease except:
 - haemochromatosis (E83.1),
 - diseases of pancreas (K85-K86),
 - pancreatic neoplasms (C25.-, D13.6, D13.7, D37.7),
 - malnutrition (E40-E46);
- (e) rheumatic fever (I00-I02) or rheumatic heart disease (I05-I09) reported as “due to” any disease other than scarlet fever (A38), streptococcal septicaemia (A40.0-), streptococcal sore throat (J02.0) and acute tonsillitis (J03.-);
- (f) any hypertensive condition reported as “due to” any neoplasm except:
 - endocrine neoplasms,
 - renal neoplasms,
 - carcinoid tumours;
- (g) chronic ischaemic heart disease (I20, I25) reported as “due to” any neoplasm;
- (h) any cerebrovascular disease (I60-I69) reported as “due to” a disease of the digestive system (K00-K92) or endocarditis (I05-I08, I09.1, I33-I38), except for cerebral embolism in I65-I66 or intracranial haemorrhage (I60-I62);
- (i) any condition described as arteriosclerotic [atherosclerotic] reported as “due to” any neoplasm;
- (j) influenza (J10-J11) reported as “due to” any other disease;
- (k) a congenital anomaly (Q00-Q99) reported as “due to” any other disease of the individual, including immaturity;
- (l) a condition of stated date of onset “X” reported as “due to” a condition of stated date of onset “Y”, when “X” predates “Y”;
- (m) any accident (V01-X59) reported as due to any other cause outside this chapter except epilepsy (G40-G41).

The above list does not cover all “highly improbable” sequences, but in other cases, the General Principle should be followed unless otherwise indicated.

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Acute or terminal circulatory diseases reported as due to malignant neoplasm, diabetes or asthma should be accepted as possible sequences in Part I of the certificate. The following conditions are regarded as acute or terminal circulatory diseases:

- I21-I22 Acute myocardial infarction
- I24.- Other acute ischaemic heart diseases
- I26.- Pulmonary embolism
- I30.- Acute pericarditis
- I33.- Acute and subacute endocarditis
- I40.- Acute myocarditis
- I44.- Atrioventricular and left bundle-branch block
- I45.- Other conduction disorders
- I46.- Cardiac arrest
- I47.- Paroxysmal tachycardia
- I48 Atrial fibrillation and flutter
- I49.- Other cardiac arrhythmias
- I50.- Heart failure
- I51.8 Other ill-defined heart diseases
- I60-I68 Cerebrovascular diseases except I67.0-I67.5 and I67.9

**Note 4.2.2 Interpretation of “highly” improbable for implementation January 2003
(incorporates URC Nos. 0049, 0050, 0051, 0104, 0108)**

4.2.2 Interpretation of “highly improbable”

The expression “highly improbable” has been used since the Sixth Revision of the ICD to indicate an unacceptable causal relationship. As a guide to the acceptability of sequences in the application of the General Principle and the selection rules, the following relationships should be regarded as “highly improbable”:

- (a) any infectious disease may be accepted as “due to” disorders of the immune mechanism such as human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease or AIDS;
- (b) an infectious or parasitic disease (A00-B99) reported as “due to” any disease outside this chapter, except that:
 - diarrhoea and gastroenteritis of presumed infectious origin (A09))
 - septicaemia (A40-A41))
 - erysipelas (A46)) may be accepted as “due to”
 - gas gangrene (A48.0)) any other disease,
 - Vincent’s angina (A69.1))
 - mycoses (B35-B49))
 - any infectious disease may be accepted as “due to” immunosuppression by chemicals (chemotherapy) and radiation. Any infectious disease classified to A00-B19 or B25-B64 reported as “due to” a malignant neoplasm will also be an acceptable sequence,
 - varicella and zoster infections (B01-B02) may be accepted as “due to” diabetes, tuberculosis and lymphoproliferative neoplasms;
- (c) a malignant neoplasm reported as “due to” any other disease, except human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) disease;
- (d) haemophilia (D66, D67, D68.0-D68.2) reported as “due to” any other disease;
- (e) diabetes (E10-E14) reported as “due to” any other disease except:
 - haemochromatosis (E83.1),
 - diseases of pancreas (K85-K86),
 - pancreatic neoplasms (C25.-, D13.6, D13.7, D37.7),
 - malnutrition (E40-E46);
- (f) rheumatic fever (I00-I02) or rheumatic heart disease (I05-I09) reported as “due to” any disease other than scarlet fever (A38), streptococcal septicaemia (A40.0-), streptococcal sore throat (J02.0) and acute tonsillitis (J03.-);
- (g) any hypertensive condition reported as “due to” any neoplasm except:
 - endocrine neoplasms,
 - renal neoplasms,
 - carcinoid tumours;
- (h) chronic ischaemic heart disease (I20, I25) reported as “due to” any neoplasm;
- (i) any cerebrovascular disease (I60-I69) reported as “due to” a disease of the digestive system (K00-K92) or endocarditis (I05-I08, I09.1, I33-I38), except for cerebral embolism in I65-I66 or intracranial haemorrhage (I60-I62);
- (j) any condition described as arteriosclerotic [atherosclerotic] reported as “due to” any neoplasm;
- (k) influenza (J10-J11) reported as “due to” any other disease;
- (l) a congenital anomaly (Q00-Q99) reported as “due to” any other disease of the individual, including immaturity;
- (m) a condition of stated date of onset “X” reported as “due to” a condition of stated date of onset “Y”, when “X” predates “Y” (but see also Example 5 in section 4.1.6);
- (n) accidents (V01-X59) reported as due to any other cause outside this chapter except:
 - (1) any accident (V01-X59) reported as due to epilepsy (G40-G41),
 - (2) a fall (W00-W19) due to a disorder of bone density (M80-M85),

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

- (3) a fall (W00-W19) due to a (pathological) fracture caused by a disorder of bone density,
- (4) asphyxia reported as due to aspiration of mucus, blood (W80) or vomitus (W78) as a result of disease conditions,
- (5) aspiration of food (liquid or solid) of any kind (W79) reported as due to a disease which affects the ability to swallow;
- (o) suicide (X60-X84) reported as “due to” any other cause.

The above list does not cover all “highly improbable” sequences, but in other cases, the General Principle should be followed unless otherwise indicated.

Acute or terminal circulatory diseases reported as due to malignant neoplasm, diabetes or asthma should be accepted as possible sequences in Part I of the certificate. The following conditions are regarded as acute or terminal circulatory diseases:

- I21-I22 Acute myocardial infarction
- I24.- Other acute ischaemic heart diseases
- I26.- Pulmonary embolism
- I30.- Acute pericarditis
- I33.- Acute and subacute endocarditis
- I40.- Acute myocarditis
- I44.- Atrioventricular and left bundle-branch block
- I45.- Other conduction disorders
- I46.- Cardiac arrest
- I47.- Paroxysmal tachycardia
- I48 Atrial fibrillation and flutter
- I49.- Other cardiac arrhythmias
- I50.- Heart failure
- I51.8 Other ill-defined heart diseases
- I60-I68 Cerebrovascular diseases except I67.0-I67.5 and I67.9

**Note 4.2.2 Interpretation of “highly” improbable for implementation January 2004
(incorporates URC Nos. 0049, 0050, 0051, 0104, 0108, 0119, 0122)**

4.2.2 Interpretation of “highly improbable”

The expression “highly improbable” has been used since the Sixth Revision of the ICD to indicate an unacceptable causal relationship. As a guide to the acceptability of sequences in the application of the General Principle and the selection rules, the following relationships should be regarded as “highly improbable”:

- (a) any infectious disease may be accepted as “due to” disorders of the immune mechanism such as human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease or AIDS;
- (b) an infectious or parasitic disease (A00-B99) reported as “due to” any disease outside this chapter, except that:
 - diarrhoea and gastroenteritis of presumed infectious origin (A09))
 - septicaemia (A40-A41))
 - erysipelas (A46)) may be accepted as “due to”
 - gas gangrene (A48.0)) any other disease,
 - Vincent’s angina (A69.1))
 - mycoses (B35-B49))
 - any infectious disease may be accepted as “due to” immunosuppression by chemicals (chemotherapy) and radiation.
 - any infectious disease classified to A00-B19 or B25-B64 reported as “due to” a malignant neoplasm will also be an acceptable sequence,
 - varicella and zoster infections (B01-B02) may be accepted as “due to” diabetes, tuberculosis and lymphoproliferative neoplasms;
- (c) a malignant neoplasm reported as “due to” any other disease, except human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) disease;
- (d) haemophilia (D66, D67, D68.0-D68.2) reported as “due to” any other disease;
- (e) diabetes (E10-E14) reported as “due to” any other disease except:
 - haemochromatosis (E83.1),
 - diseases of pancreas (K85-K86),
 - pancreatic neoplasms (C25.-, D13.6, D13.7, D37.7),
 - malnutrition (E40-E46);
- (f) rheumatic fever (I00-I02) or rheumatic heart disease (I05-I09) reported as “due to” any disease other than scarlet fever (A38), streptococcal septicaemia (A40.0-), streptococcal sore throat (J02.0) and acute tonsillitis (J03.-);
- (g) any hypertensive condition reported as “due to” any neoplasm except:
 - endocrine neoplasms,
 - renal neoplasms,
 - carcinoid tumours;
- (h) chronic ischaemic heart disease (I20, I25) reported as “due to” any neoplasm;
- (i)
 - (1) cerebrovascular diseases (I60-I69) reported as “due to” a disease of the digestive system (K00-K92),
 - (2) cerebral infarction due to thrombosis of precerebral arteries (I63.0)
cerebral infarction due to unspecified occlusion of precerebral arteries (I63.2)
cerebral infarction due to thrombosis of cerebral arteries (I63.3)
cerebral infarction due to unspecified occlusion of cerebral arteries (I63.5)
cerebral infarction due to cerebral venous thrombosis, nonpyogenic (I63.6)
other cerebral infarction (I63.8)
cerebral infarction, unspecified (I63.9)

stroke, not specified as haemorrhage or infarction (I64)
other cerebrovascular diseases (I67)
sequelae of stroke, not specified as haemorrhage or infarction (I69.4)
sequelae of other and unspecified cerebrovascular diseases (I69.8)

reported as “due to” endocarditis (I05-I08, I09.1, I33-I38),

- (3) occlusion and stenosis of precerebral arteries, not resulting in cerebral infarction (I65), *except* embolism
occlusion and stenosis of cerebral arteries, not resulting in cerebral infarction (I66), *except* embolism
sequelae of cerebral infarction (I69.3), *except* embolism

reported as “due to” endocarditis (I05-I08, I09.1, I33-I38);

- (j) any condition described as arteriosclerotic [atherosclerotic] reported as “due to” any neoplasm;
(k) influenza (J10-J11) reported as “due to” any other disease;
(l) a congenital anomaly (Q00-Q99) reported as “due to” any other disease of the individual, including immaturity;
(m) a condition of stated date of onset “X” reported as “due to” a condition of stated date of onset “Y”, when “X” predates “Y” (but see also Example 5 in section 4.1.6);
(n) accidents (V01-X59) reported as due to any other cause outside this chapter except:
 (1) any accident (V01-X59) reported as due to epilepsy (G40-G41),
 (2) a fall (W00-W19) due to a disorder of bone density (M80-M85),
 (3) a fall (W00-W19) due to a (pathological) fracture caused by a disorder of bone density,
 (4) asphyxia reported as due to aspiration of mucus, blood (W80) or vomitus (W78) as a result of disease conditions,
 (5) aspiration of food (liquid or solid) of any kind (W79) reported as due to a disease which affects the ability to swallow;
(o) suicide (X60-X84) reported as “due to” any other cause.

The above list does not cover all “highly improbable” sequences, but in other cases, the General Principle should be followed unless otherwise indicated.

Acute or terminal circulatory diseases reported as due to malignant neoplasm, diabetes or asthma should be accepted as possible sequences in Part I of the certificate. The following conditions are regarded as acute or terminal circulatory diseases:

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

I21-I22	Acute myocardial infarction	I46.-	Cardiac arrest
I24.-	Other acute ischaemic heart diseases	I47.-	Paroxysmal tachycardia
I26.-	Pulmonary embolism	I48	Atrial fibrillation and flutter
I30.-	Acute pericarditis	I49.-	Other cardiac arrhythmias
I33.-	Acute and subacute endocarditis	I50.-	Heart failure
I40.-	Acute myocarditis	I51.8	Other ill-defined heart diseases
I44.-	Atrioventricular and left bundle-branch block	I60-I68	Cerebrovascular diseases except I67.0-I67.5 and I67.9
I45.-	Other conduction disorders		

**Note 4.2.2 Interpretation of “highly” improbable for implementation January 2006
(incorporates URC Nos. 0049, 0050, 0051, 0104, 0108, 0118, 0119, 0122)**

4.2.2 Interpretation of “highly improbable”

The expression “highly improbable” has been used since the Sixth Revision of the ICD to indicate an unacceptable causal relationship. As a guide to the acceptability of sequences in the application of the General Principle and the selection rules, the following relationships should be regarded as “highly improbable”:

- (a) any infectious disease may be accepted as “due to” disorders of the immune mechanism such as human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease or AIDS;
- (b) an infectious or parasitic disease (A00-B99) reported as “due to” any disease outside this chapter, except that:
 - diarrhoea and gastroenteritis of presumed infectious origin (A09))
 - septicaemia (A40-A41))
 - erysipelas (A46)) may be accepted as “due to”
 - gas gangrene (A48.0)) any other disease,
 - Vincent’s angina (A69.1))
 - mycoses (B35-B49))
 - any infectious disease may be accepted as “due to” immunosuppression by chemicals (chemotherapy) and radiation.
 - any infectious disease classified to A00-B19 or B25-B64 reported as “due to” a malignant neoplasm will also be an acceptable sequence,
 - varicella and zoster infections (B01-B02) may be accepted as “due to” diabetes, tuberculosis and lymphoproliferative neoplasms;
- (c) a malignant neoplasm reported as “due to” any other disease, except human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) disease;
- (d) haemophilia (D66, D67, D68.0-D68.2) reported as “due to” any other disease;
- (e) diabetes (E10-E14) reported as “due to” any other disease except:
 - haemochromatosis (E83.1),
 - diseases of pancreas (K85-K86),
 - pancreatic neoplasms (C25.-, D13.6, D13.7, D37.7),
 - malnutrition (E40-E46);
- (f) rheumatic fever (I00-I02) or rheumatic heart disease (I05-I09) reported as “due to” any disease other than scarlet fever (A38), streptococcal septicaemia (A40.0-), streptococcal sore throat (J02.0) and acute tonsillitis (J03.-);
- (g) any hypertensive condition reported as “due to” any neoplasm except:
 - endocrine neoplasms,
 - renal neoplasms,
 - carcinoid tumours;
- (h) chronic ischaemic heart disease (I20, I25) reported as “due to” any neoplasm;
- (i)
 - (1) cerebrovascular diseases (I60-I69) reported as “due to” a disease of the digestive system (K00-K92),
 - (2) cerebral infarction due to thrombosis of precerebral arteries (I63.0)
cerebral infarction due to unspecified occlusion of precerebral arteries (I63.2)
cerebral infarction due to thrombosis of cerebral arteries (I63.3)
cerebral infarction due to unspecified occlusion of cerebral arteries (I63.5)
cerebral infarction due to cerebral venous thrombosis, nonpyogenic (I63.6)
other cerebral infarction (I63.8)

cerebral infarction, unspecified (I63.9)
 stroke, not specified as haemorrhage or infarction (I64)
 other cerebrovascular diseases (I67)
 sequelae of stroke, not specified as haemorrhage or infarction (I69.4)
 sequelae of other and unspecified cerebrovascular diseases (I69.8)

reported as “due to” endocarditis (I05-I08, I09.1, I33-I38),

- (3) occlusion and stenosis of precerebral arteries, not resulting in cerebral infarction (I65), *except* embolism
 occlusion and stenosis of cerebral arteries, not resulting in cerebral infarction (I66), *except* embolism
 sequelae of cerebral infarction (I69.3), *except* embolism

reported as “due to” endocarditis (I05-I08, I09.1, I33-I38);

- (j) any condition described as arteriosclerotic [atherosclerotic] reported as “due to” any neoplasm;
 (k) influenza (J10-J11) reported as “due to” any other disease;
 (l) a congenital anomaly (Q00-Q99) reported as “due to” any other disease of the individual, except for:
 • a congenital anomaly reported as “due to” a chromosome abnormality or a congenital malformation syndrome,
 • pulmonary hypoplasia reported as “due to” a congenital anomaly;
 (m) a condition of stated date of onset “X” reported as “due to” a condition of stated date of onset “Y”, when “X” predates “Y” (but see also Example 5 in section 4.1.6);
 (n) accidents (V01-X59) reported as due to any other cause outside this chapter except:
 (1) any accident (V01-X59) reported as due to epilepsy (G40-G41),
 (2) a fall (W00-W19) due to a disorder of bone density (M80-M85),
 (3) a fall (W00-W19) due to a (pathological) fracture caused by a disorder of bone density,
 (4) asphyxia reported as due to aspiration of mucus, blood (W80) or vomitus (W78) as a result of disease conditions,
 (5) aspiration of food (liquid or solid) of any kind (W79) reported as due to a disease which affects the ability to swallow;
 (o) suicide (X60-X84) reported as “due to” any other cause.

The above list does not cover all “highly improbable” sequences, but in other cases, the General Principle should be followed unless otherwise indicated.

Acute or terminal circulatory diseases reported as due to malignant neoplasm, diabetes or asthma should be accepted as possible sequences in Part I of the certificate. The following conditions are regarded as acute or terminal circulatory diseases:

I21-I22	Acute myocardial infarction	I48	Atrial fibrillation and flutter
I24.-	Other acute ischaemic heart diseases	I49.-	Other cardiac arrhythmias
I26.-	Pulmonary embolism	I50.-	Heart failure
I30.-	Acute pericarditis	I51.8	Other ill-defined heart diseases
I33.-	Acute and subacute endocarditis	I60-I68	Cerebrovascular diseases except I67.0-I67.5 and I67.9
I40.-	Acute myocarditis		
I44.-	Atrioventricular and left bundle-branch block		
I45.-	Other conduction disorders		
I46.-	Cardiac arrest		
I47.-	Paroxysmal tachycardia		

**Note 4.2.2 Interpretation of “highly” improbable for implementation January 2010
(incorporates URC 0318, 1038, 1130 and 1238)**

4.2.2 Accepted and rejected sequences for the selection of underlying cause of death for mortality statistics

This section lists sequences of causes of death that should be accepted or rejected when selecting the underlying cause of death. The purpose of these lists is to produce the most useful mortality statistics possible.¹ Thus, whether a sequence is listed as “rejected” or “accepted” may reflect interests of importance for public health rather than what is acceptable from a purely medical point of view. The following instructions always apply, therefore, whether the relationship is considered medically correct or not.

(j) *Rejected sequences*

When applying the General Principle and the selection rules, the following relationships should be rejected:

(j) Infectious diseases

The following infectious diseases should not be accepted as due to any other disease or condition, except when reported as due to human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease, malignant neoplasms and conditions impairing the immune system:

- typhoid and paratyphoid fevers, other salmonella infections, shigellosis (A01-A03)
- tuberculosis (A15-A19)

The following infectious and parasitic diseases should not be accepted as due to any other disease or condition (not even HIV/AIDS, malignant neoplasms or immunosuppression):

- cholera (A00)
- botulism (A05.1)
- plague, tularaemia, anthrax, brucellosis (A20-A23)
- leptospirosis (A27)
- tetanus, diphtheria, whooping cough, scarlet fever, meningococcal disease (A33-A39)
- diseases due to *Chlamydia psittaci* (A70)
- rickettsioses (A75-A79)
- acute poliomyelitis (A80)
- Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (A81.0)
- subacute sclerosing panencephalitis (A81.1)
- rabies, mosquito-borne viral encephalitis, tick-borne viral encephalitis, unspecified viral encephalitis (A82-A86)
- dengue haemorrhagic and other mosquito-borne viral fevers (A91-A92)
- yellow fever (A95)
- Junin and Machupo haemorrhagic fevers, Lassa fever (A96.0-A96.2)

¹ The expression “highly improbable” was previously used in the ICD to indicate a causal relationship that was not to be accepted when applying the selection rules.

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

- other viral haemorrhagic fevers (A98)
- smallpox, monkeypox, measles, rubella (B03-B06)
- acute hepatitis B and C (B16-B17.1)
- mumps (B26)
- malaria, leishmaniasis, Chagas' disease (B50-B57)
- sequelae of tuberculosis (B90)
- sequelae of poliomyelitis (B91)
- sequelae of leprosy (B92)
- sequelae of trachoma (B94.0)
- sequelae of viral encephalitis (B94.1)
- sequelae of viral hepatitis (B94.2)
- other emerging diseases reportable to WHO (e.g., SARS, influenza due to avian influenza virus)

(b) Malignant neoplasms

A malignant neoplasm should not be accepted as due to any other disease, *except* human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) disease.

I Haemophilia

Haemophilia (D66, D67, D68.0-D68.2) should not be accepted as due to any other disease.

(d) Diabetes

Diabetes (E10-E14) should not be accepted as due to any other disease *except* diseases causing damage to the pancreas.

(e) Rheumatic fever

Rheumatic fever (I00-I02) or rheumatic heart disease (I05-I09) should not be accepted as due to any disease *except*:

- scarlet fever (A38)
- streptococcal sepsis (A40.0-)
- streptococcal sore throat (J02.0)
- acute tonsillitis (J03.-)

(f) Hypertension

Hypertensive conditions should not be accepted as due to any neoplasm *except*:

- endocrine neoplasms
- renal neoplasms
- carcinoid tumours

(g) Chronic ischaemic heart disease

Chronic ischaemic heart disease (I20, I25) should not be accepted as due to any neoplasm.

(h) Cerebrovascular disease

(1) Cerebrovascular disease and diseases of the digestive system

Cerebrovascular diseases (I60-I69) should not be accepted as due to a disease of the digestive system (K00-K92), *except* cerebral haemorrhage (I61.-) due to diseases of liver (K70-K76).

(2) Cerebral infarction and endocarditis

The following cerebrovascular conditions should not be accepted as due to endocarditis (I05-I08, I09.1, I33-I38):

- cerebral infarction due to thrombosis of precerebral arteries (I63.0)
- cerebral infarction due to unspecified occlusion of precerebral arteries (I63.2)
- cerebral infarction due to thrombosis of cerebral arteries (I63.3)
- cerebral infarction due to unspecified occlusion of cerebral arteries (I63.5)
- cerebral infarction due to cerebral venous thrombosis, nonpyogenic (I63.6)
- other cerebral infarction (I63.8)
- cerebral infarction, unspecified (I63.9)
- stroke, not specified as haemorrhage or infarction (I64)
- other cerebrovascular diseases (I67)
- sequelae of stroke, not specified as haemorrhage or infarction (I69.4)
- sequelae of other and unspecified cerebrovascular diseases (I69.8)
- occlusion and stenosis of precerebral arteries, not resulting in cerebral infarction (I65), *except* embolism
- occlusion and stenosis of cerebral arteries, not resulting in cerebral infarction (I66), *except* embolism
- sequelae of cerebral infarction (I69.3), *except* embolism

(i) Atherosclerosis

Any condition described as arteriosclerotic [atherosclerotic] should not be accepted as due to any neoplasm.

(j) Influenza

Influenza (J09-J11) should not be accepted as due to any other disease.

(k) Congenital anomalies

A congenital anomaly (Q00-Q99) should not be accepted as due to any other disease of the individual, including immaturity, *except*:

- a congenital anomaly should be accepted as due to a chromosome abnormality or a congenital malformation syndrome
- pulmonary hypoplasia should be accepted as due to a congenital anomaly

(l) Conflicting durations

A condition of stated date of onset “X” should not be accepted as due to a condition of stated date of onset “Y”, when “X” predates “Y” (but see also Example 5 in section 4.1.6).

(m) Accidents

Accidents (V01-X59) should not be accepted as due to any other cause outside this chapter, *except*:

- any accident (V01-X59) should be accepted as due to epilepsy (G40-G41)
- a fall (W00-W19) should be accepted as due to a disorder of bone density (M80-M85)
- a fall (W00-W19) should be accepted as due to a (pathological) fracture caused by a disorder of bone density
- asphyxia caused by aspiration of mucus, blood (W80) or vomitus (W78) should be accepted as due to disease conditions
- aspiration of food (liquid or solid) of any kind (W79) should be accepted as due to a disease which affects the ability to swallow

(n) Suicide

Suicide (X60-X84) should not be accepted as due to any other cause.

The above list does not cover all sequences that should be rejected, but in other cases, the General Principle should be followed unless otherwise indicated.

B. Acceptable sequences

When applying the General Principle and the selection rules, the following relationships should be accepted:

(j) Infectious diseases due to other conditions

Infectious diseases other than those noted in 4.2.2 A.(a) should be accepted as due to other conditions.

(b) Infectious diseases due to HIV

The following infectious diseases should be accepted as due to human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease, malignant neoplasms and conditions impairing the immune system:

- typhoid and paratyphoid fevers, other salmonella infections, shigellosis (A01-A03)
- tuberculosis (A15-A19)

I Malignancies and HIV

A malignant neoplasm should be accepted as due to human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) disease.

(d) Diabetes

Diabetes (E10-E14) should be accepted as due to diseases causing damage to the pancreas.

(e) Rheumatic fever

Rheumatic fever (I00-I02) or rheumatic heart disease (I05-I09) should be accepted as due to

- scarlet fever (A38)
- streptococcal sepsis (A40.0-)
- streptococcal sore throat (J02.0)
- acute tonsillitis (J03.-)

(f) Hypertension

Any hypertensive condition should be accepted as due to:

- endocrine neoplasms
- renal neoplasms
- carcinoid tumours

(g) Cerebrovascular diseases

- cerebral haemorrhage (I61.-) should be accepted as due to diseases of liver (K70-K76)

Embolism causing:

- occlusion and stenosis of precerebral arteries (I65)
- occlusion and stenosis of cerebral arteries (I66)
- sequelae of cerebral infarction (I69.3)

should be accepted as due to endocarditis (I05-I08, I09.1, I33-I38).

(h) Congenital anomalies

- a congenital anomaly should be accepted as due to a chromosome abnormality or

a congenital malformation syndrome

- pulmonary hypoplasia should be accepted as due to a congenital anomaly

(j) Accidents

- any accident (V01-X59) should be accepted as due to epilepsy (G40-G41)
- a fall (W00-W19) should be accepted as due to a disorder of bone density (M80-M85)
- a fall (W00-W19) should be accepted as due to a (pathological) fracture caused by a disorder of bone density
- asphyxia caused by aspiration of mucus, blood (W80) or vomitus (W78) should be accepted as due to disease conditions,
- aspiration of food (liquid or solid) of any kind (W79) should be accepted as due to a disease which affects the ability to swallow;

(j) Acute or terminal circulatory diseases

Acute or terminal circulatory diseases reported as due to malignant neoplasm, diabetes or asthma should be accepted as possible sequences in Part I of the certificate. The following conditions are regarded as acute or terminal circulatory diseases:

- acute and subsequent myocardial infarction (I21-I22)
- other acute ischaemic heart diseases (I24)
- pulmonary embolism (I26)
- acute pericarditis (I30)
- acute and subacute endocarditis (I33)
- acute myocarditis (I40)
- atrioventricular and left bundle-branch block (I44)
- other conduction disorders (I45)
- cardiac arrest (I46)
- paroxysmal tachycardia (I47)
- atrial fibrillation and flutter (I48)
- other cardiac arrhythmias (I49)
- heart failure (I50)
- other ill-defined heart diseases (I51.8)
- cerebrovascular diseases in I60-I66, I676-I67.8 and I69

Add text p.72	(i) (1) cerebrovascular diseases (I60-I69) reported as “due to” a disease of the digestive system (K00-K92), <u>except Cerebral haemorrhage (I61.-) due to Diseases of liver (K70-K76)</u> (2) cerebral infarction due to thrombosis of precerebral arteries (I63.0) cerebral infarction due to unspecified occlusion of precerebral arteries (I63.2) cerebral infarction due to thrombosis of cerebral arteries (I63.3)	MRG 1038)	October 2006	Minor	January 2008
Move location of sequelae of TB and add mention of chronic forms of hepatitis to section 4.2.2 of ICD-10 volume 2	<p>4.2.2 Accepted and rejected sequences for the selection of underlying cause of death for mortality statistics</p> <p>This section lists sequences of causes of death that should be accepted or rejected when selecting the underlying cause of death. The purpose of these lists is to produce the most useful. Thus, whether a sequence is listed as “rejected” or “accepted” may reflect interests of importance for public health rather than what is acceptable from a purely medical point of view always apply, therefore, whether the relationship is considered medically correct or not.</p> <p><i>... Rejected sequences</i></p> <p>When applying the General Principle and the selection rules, the following relationships should be rejected:</p> <p>(a) Infectious diseases</p> <p>The following infectious diseases should not be accepted as due to any other disease or condition, except when reported as due to human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease, malignant impairing the immune system:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • typhoid and paratyphoid fevers, other salmonella infections, shigellosis (A01-A03) • tuberculosis (A15-A19) • <u>sequelae of tuberculosis (B90)</u> <p>The following infectious and parasitic diseases should not be accepted as due to any other disease or condition (not even HIV/AIDS, malignant neoplasms or immunosuppression):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • cholera (A00) • botulism (A05.1) • plague, tularaemia, anthrax, brucellosis (A20-A23) • leptospirosis (A27) • tetanus, diphtheria, whooping cough, scarlet fever, meningococcal disease (A33-A39) • diseases due to Chlamydia psittaci (A70) • rickettsioses (A75-A79) • acute poliomyelitis (A80) • Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (A81.0) 	MRG 1798	October 2011	Minor	January 2013

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • subacute sclerosing panencephalitis (A81.1) • rabies, mosquito-borne viral encephalitis, tick-borne viral encephalitis, unspecified viral encephalitis (A82-A86) • dengue haemorrhagic and other mosquito-borne viral fevers (A91-A92) • yellow fever (A95) • Junin and Machupo haemorrhagic fevers, Lassa fever (A96.0-A96.2) • other viral haemorrhagic fevers (A98) • smallpox, monkeypox, measles, rubella (B03-B06) • acute hepatitis B and C (B16-B17.1) • <u>chronic hepatitis B and C (B18.0-B18.2)</u> • mumps (B26) • malaria, leishmaniasis, Chagas' disease (B50-B57) • sequelae of tuberculosis (B90) • sequelae of poliomyelitis (B91) • sequelae of leprosy (B92) • sequelae of trachoma (B94.0) • sequelae of viral encephalitis (B94.1) • sequelae of viral hepatitis (B94.2) • other emerging diseases reportable to WHO (e.g., SARS, influenza due to avian influenza virus) <p>(b) Malignant neoplasms</p> <p>...</p> <p>The above list does not cover all sequences that should be rejected, but in other cases, the General Principle should be followed unless otherwise indicated.</p> <p><i>B. Acceptable sequences</i></p> <p>When applying the General Principle and the selection rules, the following relationships should be accepted:</p> <p>(j) Infectious diseases due to other conditions Infectious diseases other than those noted in 4.2.2 A.(a) should be accepted as due to other conditions.</p> <p>(b) Infectious diseases due to HIV</p> <p>The following infectious diseases should be accepted as due to human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease, malignant neoplasms and conditions impairing the immune system:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • typhoid and paratyphoid fevers, other salmonella infections, shigellosis (A01-A03) • tuberculosis (A15-A19, B90) 				
--	--	--	--	--

	<p>I Malignancies and HIV</p> <p>A malignant neoplasm should be accepted as due to human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) disease.</p> <p>...</p> <p>1 The expression “highly improbable” was previously used in the ICD to indicate a causal relationship that was not to be accepted when applying the selection rules.</p> <p>(j) Infectious diseases due to other conditions Infectious diseases other than those noted in 4.2.2 A.(a) should be accepted as due to other conditions.</p> <p>(b) Infectious diseases due to HIV</p> <p>The following infectious diseases should be accepted as due to human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease, malignant neoplasms and conditions impairing the immune system:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • typhoid and paratyphoid fevers, other salmonella infections, shigellosis (A01-A03) • tuberculosis (A15-A19, B90) <p>I Malignancies and HIV</p> <p>A malignant neoplasm should be accepted as due to human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) disease.</p> <p>...</p> <p>1 The expression “highly improbable” was previously used in the ICD to indicate a causal relationship that was not to be accepted when applying the selection rules.</p>				
Change the notes on diabetes in 4.2.2 as follows:	<p>Section 4.2.2</p> <p>A. Rejected sequences</p> <p>(d) Diabetes</p> <p><u>Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (E10) (E10-E14)</u> should not be accepted as “due to” any other disease <i>except for</i> conditions causing <u>damage to the pancreas</u> autoimmune</p>	MRG 1865	October 2011	Minor	January 2013

	<p><u>destruction of β-cells.</u></p> <p><u>Non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (E11) should not be accepted as “due to” any other disease <i>except</i> conditions causing insulin resistance.</u></p> <p><u>Other and unspecified diabetes mellitus (E13-E14) should not be accepted as “due to” any other disease <i>except</i> conditions causing damage to the pancreas.</u></p> <p>See Appendix 7.2 for a list of the conditions that can cause diabetes.</p> <p>B. Acceptable sequences (d) diabetes: <u>Insulin dependent diabetes mellitus (E10) (E10-E14) should be accepted as “due to” diseases causing damage to the pancreas autoimmune destruction of β-cells.</u></p> <p><u>Non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (E11) should be accepted as “due to” conditions causing insulin resistance.</u></p> <p><u>Other and unspecified diabetes mellitus (E13-E14) should be accepted as “due to” conditions causing damage to the pancreas.</u></p> <p>See Appendix 7.2 for a list of the conditions that can cause diabetes.</p>				
	<p>4.2.2 Accepted and rejected sequences for the selection of underlying cause of death for mortality statistics</p> <p>This section lists sequences of causes of death that should be accepted or rejected when selecting the underlying cause of death....</p> <p>...</p> <p>A. Rejected sequences</p> <p>When applying the General Principle and the selection rules, the following relationships should be rejected:</p> <p>(a) Infectious diseases</p> <p>...</p> <p>The following infectious and parasitic diseases should not be accepted as due to any other disease or condition (not even HIV/AIDS, malignant neoplasms or immunosuppression):</p>	MRG 1969	October 2012	Major	January 2016

Add text	<p>...</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • leptospirosis (A27) • leprosy (Hansen's disease) (A30) • tetanus, diphtheria, whooping cough, scarlet fever, meningococcal disease (A33-A39) • diseases due to Chlamydia psittaci (A70) • trachoma (A71) • rickettsioses (A75-A79) <p>...</p>				
Delete text	<p>4.2.3 Effect of duration on classification</p> <p>In evaluating the reported sequence ... This would apply in the interpretation of “highly improbable” relationships (see above) and in Modification Rule F (sequelae).</p>	MRG 1791	October 2011	Major	January 2013
Delete text	<p>4.2.4 Sequelae</p> <p>Certain categories (B90-B94, E64.-, E68, G09, I69, O97 and Y85-Y87) are to be used for underlying cause mortality coding to indicate that death resulted from the late (residual effects of a given disease or injury rather than during the active phase. Modification Rule F applies in such circumstances. Conditions reported ...</p>	MRG 1791	October 2011	Major	January 2013
Page 71 Add text	<p>4.2.6 Operations</p> <p>If an operation appears on the certificate as the cause of death without mention of the condition for which it was performed or of the findings at operation, and the alphabetical index does not provide a specific code for the operation, code to the residual category for the organ or site indicated by the name of the operation (e.g. code “nephrectomy” to N28.9). If the operation does not indicate an organ or site, e.g. “laparotomy”, code to “Other ill-defined and unspecified causes or mortality” (R99), unless there is a mention of a therapeutic misadventure classifiable to Y60-Y84 or a postoperative complication. <u>If there is mention of a misadventure at the time of the procedure, code to Y60-Y69. If there is a mention of an abnormal reaction of the patient, without mention of misadventure at the time of the procedure, code to Y83-Y84.</u></p>	MRG 0164	October 2003	Major	January 2006
	<p>4.2.6 Operations</p> <p>If an operation appears on the certificate as the cause of death without mention of the condition for which it was performed or of the findings at operation, and the alphabetical index does not provide a specific code for the operation, code to the residual category for the organ or site indicated by the name of the operation (e.g. code “nephrectomy” to N28.9). If</p>	MRG 1061	October 2006	Major	January 2010

Add text p. 76	<p>the operation does not indicate an organ or site, e.g. “laparotomy”, code to “Other ill-defined and unspecified causes of mortality” (R99), unless there is a mention of a therapeutic misadventure classifiable to Y60-Y84 or a postoperative complication. If there is mention of a misadventure at the time of the procedure, code to Y60-Y69. If there is a mention of an abnormal reaction of the patient, without mention of misadventure at the time of the procedure, code to Y83-Y84.</p> <p><u>Example: I (a) Pulmonary embolism</u> <u>(b) Appendectomy</u> <u>Code to unspecified disease of appendix (K38.9)</u></p> <p><u>Example: I (a) Accidental puncture of aorta</u> <u>(b) Laparotomy</u> <u>Code to unintentional puncture during surgical operation (Y60.)</u></p> <p><u>Code complications of obstetrical surgery to the reason for the surgery. If no reason for the obstetrical surgery is stated, code to O75.4.</u></p> <p><u>Example: I (a) Postoperative haemorrhage</u> <u>(b) Caesarean section</u> <u>(c) Prolonged labour</u> <u>Code to long labour, unspecified (O63.9)</u></p> <p><u>Example: I (a) Amniotic fluid embolism</u> <u>(b) Caesarean section</u> <u>Code to other complications of obstetric surgery and procedures (O75.4)</u></p>				
p 87 Modify text:	<p>4.2.6 Operations If an operation appears ... unless there is a mention of a therapeutic misadventure classifiable to O74, O75.4 or Y60-Y84 or a postoperative complication. ... If there is a mention of a misadventure at the time of the procedure, code to O74, O75.4 or Y60-Y69. If there is a mention of an abnormal reaction of the patient, without mention of misadventure at the time of the procedure, code to O74, O75.4 or Y83-Y84.</p> <p><u>Whenever a complication of a procedure is not indexed or is not a synonym of an inclusion or indexed term, code early complications and mechanical complications to T80-T88. Code late complications and functional complications to the appropriate system chapter.</u></p>	MbRG 1222	October 2007	Minor	January 2009
Revise and add text	<p>4.2.6 Operations <u>Complications of surgical and medical care</u></p> <p><u>A. Surgical and other procedures without mention of cause</u></p> <p>If an operation or other medical procedure appears on the certificate as the cause of death ... without mention of misadventure at the time of the procedure, code to O74, O75.4 or Y83-Y84.</p> <p>....</p>	MRG 1474	October 2009	Minor	January 2011

	<p><u>B. Medical devices associated with adverse incidents due to external causes classified elsewhere</u></p> <p><u>If a death is caused by an incident involving a medical device, but the incident is due to an external cause classified elsewhere and not to any breakdown or malfunctioning of the device itself, code to the external cause.</u></p> <p><u>Ex xx:</u> I(a) Inhalation pneumonia (b) Hemorrhage of trachea (c) Fell from bed while attached to respirator II Respirator treatment following liver transplant</p> <p><u>Code to fall involving bed (W06). There is no mention of any breakdown or malfunctioning of the respirator.</u></p> <p><u>Ex xx:</u> I(a) Pulmonary edema (b) Intra-aortic balloon pump stopped (c) Power cut due to hurricane (d) Recent myocardial infarction with mitral insufficiency</p> <p><u>Code to victim of cataclysmic storm (X37). There is no indication of any malfunctioning of the balloon pump.</u></p> <p><u>If the external cause of the incident is not specifically classified, code to exposure to unspecified factor causing other and unspecified injury (X59.9).</u></p> <p><u>Ex xx:</u> I(a) Cardiac and respiratory failure (b) Stopped administration of inotrop drugs (c) Accidental removal of subclavian line II Surgery for acute rupture of gallbladder</p> <p><u>Code to exposure to unspecified factor causing other and unspecified injury (X59.9), since accidental removal is not specifically classified.</u></p>				
<p>The following strikes out the current section for 4.2.7 and provides the suggested repl</p>	<p>4.2.7 Malignant neoplasms</p> <p>When a malignant neoplasm is considered to be the underlying cause of death, it is most important to determine the primary site. Morphology and behaviour should also be taken into consideration. Cancer is a generic term and may be used for any morphological group, although it is rarely applied to malignant neoplasms of lymphatic, haematopoietic and</p>	<p>MRG 1131</p>	<p>October 2007</p>	<p>Major</p>	<p>January 2010</p>

acement.	<p>related tissues. Carcinoma is sometimes used incorrectly as a synonym for cancer. Some death certificates may be ambiguous if there was doubt about the site of the primary or imprecision in drafting the certificate. In these circumstances, if possible, the certifier should be asked to give clarification. Failing this, the guidelines given below should be observed. The morphological types of tumours classified in on pp. 1179–1204 of Volume 1 can be found in the Alphabetical Index with their morphology code and with an indication as to the coding by site.</p> <p><i>A. Implication of malignancy</i></p> <p>Mention on the certificate that a neoplasm has produced metastases (secondaries) means that it must be coded as malignant, even though this neoplasm without mention of metastases would be classified to some other section of Chapter II.</p> <p><i>Example 1:</i> — I (a) Metastatic involvement of lymph nodes — (b) Carcinoma in situ of breast Code to malignant neoplasm of breast (C50.9).</p> <p><i>B. Sites with prefixes or imprecise definitions</i></p> <p>Neoplasms of sites prefixed by “peri”, “para”, “pre”, “supra”, “infra”, etc. or described as in the “area” or “region” of a site, unless these terms are specifically indexed, should be coded as follows: for morphological types classifiable to one of the categories C40, C41 (bone and articular cartilage), C43 (malignant melanoma of skin), C44 (other malignant neoplasms of skin), C45 (mesothelioma), C47 (peripheral nerves and autonomic nervous system), C49 (connective and soft tissue), C70 (meninges), C71 (brain) and C72 (other parts of central nervous system), code to the appropriate subdivision of that category; otherwise code to the appropriate subdivision of C76 (other and ill defined sites).</p> <p><i>Example 2:</i> — I (a) Fibrosarcoma in the region of the leg Code to malignant neoplasm of connective and soft tissue of lower limb (C49.2).</p> <p><i>C. Malignant neoplasms of unspecified site with other reported conditions</i></p> <p>When the site of a primary malignant neoplasm is not specified, no assumption of the site should be made from the location of other reported conditions such as perforation, obstruction, or haemorrhage. These conditions may arise in sites unrelated to the neoplasm, e.g. intestinal obstruction may be caused by the spread of an ovarian malignancy.</p> <p><i>Example 3:</i> — I (a) Obstruction of intestine — (b) Carcinoma Code to malignant neoplasm without specification of site (C80).</p> <p><i>D. Malignant neoplasms with primary site indicated</i></p>				
----------	--	--	--	--	--

	<p>If a particular site is indicated as primary, it should be selected, regardless of the position on the certificate or whether in Part I or Part II. If the primary site is stated to be unknown, see E below. The primary site may be indicated in one of the following ways:</p> <p>(a) — The specification of one site as primary in either Part I or II. Example 4: — I (a) Carcinoma of bladder II — Primary in kidney Code to malignant neoplasm of kidney (C64).</p> <p>(b) — The specification of other sites as “secondary”, “metastases”, “spread” or “carcinomatosis”. Example 5: — I (a) Carcinoma of breast — (b) Secondaries in brain Code to malignant neoplasm of breast (C50.9), since Rule 2 applies</p> <p>(c) — Morphology indicates a primary malignant neoplasm. If a morphological type implies a primary site, such as hepatoma, consider this as if the word “primary” had been included. Example 6: — I (a) Metastatic carcinoma — (b) Pseudomucinous adenocarcinoma Code to malignant neoplasm of ovary (C56), since pseudomucinous adenocarcinoma of unspecified site is assigned to the ovary in the Alphabetical Index. If two or more primary sites or morphologies are indicated, these should be coded according to sections F, G and H, below.</p> <p><i>E. Primary site unknown</i></p> <p>If the statement, “primary site unknown”, or its equivalent, appears anywhere on a certificate, code to the category for unspecified site for the morphological type involved (e.g. adenocarcinoma C80, fibrosarcoma C49.9, osteosarcoma C41.9), regardless of the site(s) mentioned elsewhere on the certificate. Example 7: — I (a) Secondary carcinoma of liver — (b) Primary site unknown — (c) ? Stomach ? Colon Code to carcinoma without specification of site (C80). Example 8: — I (a) Generalized metastases — (b) Melanoma of back — (c) Primary site unknown Code to malignant melanoma of unspecified site (C43.9).</p> <p><i>F. Independent (primary) multiple sites (C97)</i></p>				
--	---	--	--	--	--

	<p>The presence of more than one primary neoplasm could be indicated by mention of two different anatomical sites or two distinct morphological types (e.g. hypernephroma and intraductal carcinoma), or by a mix of a morphological type that implies a specific site, plus a second site. It is highly improbable that one primary would be due to another primary malignant neoplasm except for the group of malignant neoplasms of lymphoid, haematopoietic and related tissue (C81-C96), within which one form of malignancy may terminate in another (e.g. leukaemia may follow non-Hodgkin's lymphoma).</p> <p>If two or more sites mentioned in Part I are in the same organ system, see section H. If the sites are not in the same organ system and there is no indication that any is primary or secondary, code to malignant neoplasms of independent (primary) multiple sites (C97), unless all are classifiable to C81-C96, or one of the sites mentioned is a common site of metastases or the lung (see G below).</p> <p>Example 9: — I (a) Cancer of stomach — (b) Cancer of breast Code to malignant neoplasms of independent (primary) multiple sites (C97), since two different anatomical sites are mentioned and it is unlikely that one primary malignant neoplasm would be due to another.</p> <p>Example 10: — I (a) Hodgkin's disease — (b) Carcinoma of bladder Code to malignant neoplasms of independent (primary) multiple sites (C97), since two distinct morphological types are mentioned.</p> <p>Example 11: — I (a) Acute lymphocytic leukaemia — (b) Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma Code to non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (C85.9), since both are classifiable to C81-C96 and the sequence is acceptable.</p> <p>Example 12: — I (a) Leukaemia — (b) Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma — (c) Carcinoma of ovary Code to malignant neoplasms of independent (primary) multiple sites (C97), since, although two of the neoplasms are classifiable to C81-C96, there is mention of a site elsewhere.</p> <p>Example 13: — I (a) Leukaemia II — Carcinoma of breast Code to leukaemia (C95.9) because the carcinoma of breast is in Part II. When dealing with multiple sites, only sites in Part I of the certificate should be considered (see H).</p> <p>G. Metastatic neoplasms</p> <p>When a malignant neoplasm spreads or metastasizes it generally retains the same morphology even though it may become less differentiated. Some metastases have such a characteristic microscopic appearance that the pathologist can infer the primary site with confidence, e.g. thyroid. Widespread metastasis of a carcinoma is often called carcinomatosis. If an unqualified nonspecific term such as carcinoma or sarcoma appears</p>				
--	---	--	--	--	--

<p>with a term describing a more specific histology of the same broad group, code to the site of the more specific morphology, assuming the other to be metastatic.</p> <p>Although malignant cells can metastasize anywhere in the body, certain sites are more common than others and must be treated differently (see below). However, if one of these sites appears alone on a death certificate and is not qualified by the word “metastatic”, it should be considered primary.</p> <p><i>Common sites of metastases</i></p> <table><tr><td>Bone</td><td>Mediastinum</td></tr><tr><td>Brain</td><td>Meninges</td></tr><tr><td>Diaphragm</td><td>Peritoneum</td></tr><tr><td>Heart</td><td>Pleura</td></tr><tr><td>Liver</td><td>Retroperitoneum</td></tr><tr><td>Lung</td><td>Spinal cord</td></tr></table> <p>Lymph nodes</p> <p>III defined sites (sites classifiable to C76)</p> <p>— The lung poses special problems in that it is a common site for both metastases and primary malignant neoplasms. Lung should be considered as a common site of metastases whenever it appears with sites not on this list. However, when the bronchus or bronchogenic cancer is mentioned this neoplasm should be considered primary. If lung is mentioned and the only other sites are on the list of common sites of metastases, consider lung primary.</p> <p>— Malignant neoplasm of lymph nodes not specified as primary should be assumed to be secondary.</p> <p>-</p> <p>-</p> <p>Example 14: I (a) Cancer of brain</p> <p>Code to malignant neoplasm of brain (C71.9).</p> <p>Example 15: I (a) Cancer of bone</p> <p>(b) Metastatic carcinoma of lung</p> <p>Code to malignant neoplasm of lung (C34.9), since bone is on the list of common sites of metastases and lung can therefore be assumed to be primary.</p> <p>The adjective “metastatic” is used in two ways—sometimes meaning a secondary from a primary elsewhere and sometimes denoting a primary that has given rise to metastases. In order to avoid confusion, the following guidelines are proposed:</p> <p>(a) — Malignant neoplasm described as “metastatic from” a specified site should be interpreted as primary of that site.</p> <p>Example 16: I (a) Metastatic teratoma from ovary</p> <p>Code to malignant neoplasm of ovary (C56).</p> <p>(b) — Malignant neoplasm described as “metastatic to” a site should be interpreted as secondary of that site unless the morphology indicates a specific primary site.</p> <p>Example 17: I (a) Metastatic carcinoma to the rectum</p> <p>Code to secondary malignant neoplasm of rectum (C78.5). The word “to” clearly indicates</p>	Bone	Mediastinum	Brain	Meninges	Diaphragm	Peritoneum	Heart	Pleura	Liver	Retroperitoneum	Lung	Spinal cord				
Bone	Mediastinum															
Brain	Meninges															
Diaphragm	Peritoneum															
Heart	Pleura															
Liver	Retroperitoneum															
Lung	Spinal cord															

	<p>rectum as secondary.</p> <p><i>Example 18:</i> I (a) Metastatic osteosarcoma to brain Code to malignant neoplasm of bone (C41.9), since this is the unspecified site of osteosarcoma.</p> <p>(e) — A single malignant neoplasm described as “metastatic (of)”.</p> <p>The terms “metastatic” and “metastatic of” should be interpreted as follows:</p> <p>(i) — If one site is mentioned and this is qualified as metastatic, code to malignant primary of that particular site if no morphological type is mentioned and it is not a common metastatic site (see list of common sites of metastases given above).</p> <p><i>Example 19:</i> I (a) Cervical cancer, metastatic Code to malignant neoplasm of cervix (C53.9).</p> <p>(ii) — If no site is reported but the morphological type is qualified as metastatic, code as for primary site unspecified of the particular morphological type involved.</p> <p><i>Example 20:</i> I (a) Metastatic oat cell carcinoma Code to malignant neoplasm of lung (C34.9).</p> <p>(iii) — If a single morphological type and a site, other than a common metastatic site (see list given above), are mentioned as metastatic, code to the specific category for the morphological type and site involved.</p> <p><i>Example 21:</i> I (a) Metastatic melanoma of arm Code to malignant melanoma of skin of arm (C43.6), since in this case the ill-defined site of arm is a specific site for melanoma, not a common site of metastases classifiable to C76.</p> <p>(iv) — If a single morphological type is mentioned as metastatic and the site mentioned is one of the common sites of metastases except lung, code to “unspecified site” for the morphological type, unless the unspecified site is classified to C80 (malignant neoplasm without specification of site), in which case code to secondary malignant neoplasm of the site mentioned.</p> <p><i>Example 22:</i> I (a) Metastatic osteosarcoma of brain Code to malignant neoplasm of bone, unspecified (C41.9), since brain is on the list of common sites of metastases.</p> <p>(v) — If one of the common sites of metastases, except lung, is described as metastatic and no other site or morphology is mentioned, code to secondary neoplasm of the site (C77–C79).</p> <p><i>Example 23:</i> I (a) Metastatic brain cancer Code to secondary malignant neoplasm of brain (C79.3).</p> <p><i>Example 24:</i> I (a) Metastatic carcinoma of lung Code to malignant neoplasm of lung (C34.9).</p> <p>(d) — More than one malignant neoplasm qualified as metastatic.</p> <p>(i) — If two or more sites with the same morphology, not on the list of common sites of metastases, are reported and all are qualified as “metastatic”, code as for primary site unspecified of the anatomical system and of the morphological type involved.</p>				
--	--	--	--	--	--

<p>Example 25: I (a) Metastatic carcinoma of prostate – (b) Metastatic carcinoma of skin Code to malignant neoplasm without specification of site (C80), since metastatic carcinoma of prostate is not likely to be due to metastatic carcinoma of skin; both are probably due to spread from a malignant neoplasm of unknown primary site, which should have been entered on line (c).</p> <p>Example 26: I (a) Metastatic carcinoma of stomach – (b) Metastatic carcinoma of breast – (c) Metastatic carcinoma of lung Code to malignant neoplasm without specification of site (C80), since breast and stomach do not belong to the same anatomical system and lung is on the list of common sites of metastases.</p> <p>(ii) If two or more morphological types of different histological groups are qualified as metastatic, code to malignant neoplasms of independent (primary) multiple sites (C97) (see F).</p> <p>Example 27: I (a) Bowel obstruction – (b) Metastatic adenocarcinoma of bowel – (c) Metastatic sarcoma of uterus Code to malignant neoplasms of independent (primary) multiple sites (C97).</p> <p>(iii) If a morphology implying site and an independent anatomical site are both qualified as metastatic, code to malignant neoplasm without specification of site (C80).</p> <p>Example 28: I (a) Metastatic colonic and renal cell carcinoma Code to malignant neoplasm without specification of site (C80).</p> <p>(iv) If more than one site with the same morphology is mentioned and all but one are qualified as metastatic or appear on the list of common sites of metastases, code to the site that is not qualified as metastatic, irrespective of the order of entry or whether it is in Part I or Part II. If all sites are qualified as metastatic or on the list of common sites of metastases, including lung, code to malignant neoplasm without specification of site (C80).</p> <p>Example 29: I (a) Metastatic carcinoma of stomach – (b) Carcinoma of gallbladder – (c) Metastatic carcinoma of colon Code to malignant neoplasm of gallbladder (C23).</p> <p>Example 30: I (a) Metastatic carcinoma of ovary (b) Carcinoma of lung (c) Metastatic cervical carcinoma Code to malignant neoplasm without specification of site (C80).</p> <p>Example 31: I (a) Metastatic carcinoma of stomach – (b) Metastatic carcinoma of lung II Carcinoma of colon Code to malignant neoplasm of colon (C18.9), since this is the only diagnosis not qualified</p>				
---	--	--	--	--

	<p>as metastatic, even though it is in Part II.</p> <p>(v) — If all sites mentioned are on the list of common sites of metastases, code to unknown primary site of the morphological type involved, unless lung is mentioned, in which case code to malignant neoplasm of lung (C34.).</p> <p><i>Example 32:</i> — I (a) Cancer of liver — (b) Cancer of abdomen Code to malignant neoplasm without specification of site (C80), since both are on the list of common sites of metastases. (Abdomen is one of the ill defined sites included in C76. .)</p> <p><i>Example 33:</i> — I (a) Cancer of brain — (b) Cancer of lung Code to cancer of lung (C34.9), since lung in this case is considered to be primary, because brain, the only other site mentioned, is on the list of common sites of metastases.</p> <p>(vi) — If only one of the sites mentioned is on the list of common sites of metastases or lung, code to the site not on the list.</p> <p><i>Example 34:</i> — I (a) Cancer of lung — (b) Cancer of breast Code to malignant neoplasm of breast (C50.9), since lung in this case is considered to be a metastatic site, because breast is not on the list of common sites of metastases.</p> <p>(vii) — If one or more of the sites mentioned is a common site of metastases (see list given above) but two or more sites or different morphological types are also mentioned, code to malignant neoplasms of independent (primary) multiple sites (C97) (see F above).</p> <p><i>Example 35:</i> — I (a) Cancer of liver — (b) Cancer of bladder — (c) Cancer of colon Code to malignant neoplasms of independent (primary) multiple sites (C97), since liver is on the list of common sites of metastases and there are still two other independent sites.</p> <p>(viii) — If there is a mixture of several sites qualified as metastatic and several other sites are mentioned, refer to the rules for multiple sites (see F above and H below).</p> <p><i>H. Multiple sites</i></p> <p>When dealing with multiple sites, only sites in Part I of the certificate should be considered. If malignant neoplasms of more than one site are entered on the certificate, the site listed as primary or not indicated whether primary or secondary should be selected (see D, E and F above).</p> <p><i>Multiple sites with none specified as primary</i></p> <p>(a) — Notwithstanding the provisions of Rule H to consider only sites in Part I, if one of the common sites of metastases, excluding lung, and another site or morphological type are mentioned anywhere on the certificate, code to the other site. If, however, a malignant neoplasm of lymphatic, haematopoietic, or related tissue appears in Part II, only Part I</p>				
--	---	--	--	--	--

<p>should be considered.</p> <p><i>Example 36:</i> I (a) Cancer of stomach —(b) Cancer of liver Code to malignant neoplasm of stomach (C16.9). Although the sequence suggests that the liver was the primary site, metastasis from liver—a common site of metastases—to stomach is improbable and it is assumed that the stomach cancer metastasized to the liver.</p> <p><i>Example 37:</i> I (a) Peritoneal cancer II Mammary carcinoma Code to malignant neoplasm of breast (C50.9), since the peritoneal cancer is presumed secondary because it is on the list of common sites of metastases.</p> <p>(b) Malignant neoplasms described as one site “or” another, or if “or” is implied, should be coded to the category that embraces both sites. If no appropriate category exists, code to the unspecified site of the morphological type involved. This rule applies to all sites whether they are on the list of common sites of metastases or not.</p> <p><i>Example 38:</i> I (a) Carcinoma of ascending or descending colon Code to malignant neoplasm of colon, unspecified (C18.9).</p> <p><i>Example 39:</i> I (a) Osteosarcoma of lumbar vertebrae or sacrum Code to malignant neoplasm of bone, unspecified (C41.9).</p> <p>-</p> <p>(c) If two or more morphological types of malignant neoplasm occur in lymphoid, haematopoietic or related tissue (C81-C96), code according to the sequence given since these neoplasms sometimes terminate as another entity within C81-C96. Acute exacerbation of, or blastic crisis in, chronic leukaemia should be coded to the chronic form.</p> <p><i>Example 40:</i> I (a) Acute lymphocytic leukaemia —(b) Non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma Code to non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma (C85.9).</p> <p><i>Example 41:</i> I (a) Acute and chronic lymphocytic leukaemia Code to chronic lymphocytic leukaemia (C91.1).</p> <p><i>Multiple sites in the same organ system</i> If the sites mentioned are in the same organ system and are contiguous, the .8 subcategories, including those listed in on p. 183 of Volume 1, should be used. This applies when the certificate describes the sites as one site “and” another or if the sites are mentioned on separate lines. Code to the .8 subcategory that embraces both sites. If there is any doubt about the contiguity of the sites mentioned, code to the unspecified site of the organ mentioned.</p> <p>(a) If there is mention of two contiguous subsites in the same site, code to the .8 subcategory of that three-character category.</p> <p><i>Example 42:</i> I (a) Carcinoma of descending colon and sigmoid Code to overlapping malignant neoplasm of colon (C18.8).</p> <p>(b) If the subsites are not contiguous, code to the .9 subcategory of that three-character category.</p>				
---	--	--	--	--

<p>Example 43: I (a) Carcinoma of head of pancreas —(b) Carcinoma of tail of pancreas Code to malignant neoplasm of pancreas, unspecified (C25.9).</p> <p>(e) — If there is mention of two contiguous sites classified to separate three character categories within the same body system, code to the .8 subcategory of that general body system (see list in Note 5 in the introduction to Chapter II of Volume I, p. 183).</p> <p>Example 44: I (a) Carcinoma of vagina and cervix Code to malignant neoplasm of overlapping sites of female genital organs (C57.8).</p> <p>(d) — If two sites are mentioned on the certificate and both are in the same organ system and have the same morphological type, code to the .9 subcategory of that organ system, as in the following list:</p> <p>C26.9 — Ill defined sites within the digestive system C39.9 — Ill defined sites within the respiratory system C41.9 — Bone and articular cartilage, unspecified C49.9 — Connective and soft tissue, unspecified C57.9 — Female genital organ, unspecified C63.9 — Male genital organ, unspecified C68.9 — Urinary organ, unspecified C72.9 — Central nervous system, unspecified</p> <p>Example 45: I (a) Pulmonary embolism —(b) Cancer of stomach —(c) Cancer of gallbladder Code to ill defined sites within the digestive system (C26.9).</p> <p>(e) — If there is no available .8 or .9 subcategory, code to malignant neoplasms of independent (primary) multiple sites (C97).</p> <p>Example 46: I (a) Cardiac arrest —(b) Carcinoma of prostate and bladder Code to malignant neoplasms of independent (primary) multiple sites (C97), since there is no available .8 subcategory.</p> <p><i>I.—Infectious diseases and malignant neoplasms</i></p> <p>(a) — Owing to the effect of chemotherapy on the immune system, some cancer patients become prone to infectious diseases and die of them. Therefore, any infectious disease classified to A00-B19 or B25-B64 reported as “due to” cancer will be an acceptable sequence whether in Part I or II.</p> <p>Example 47: I (a) Zoster —(b) Chronic lymphocytic leukaemia Code to chronic lymphocytic leukaemia (C91.1).</p>				
--	--	--	--	--

	<p>(b) — Except for human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease, no infectious or parasitic disease will be accepted as causing a malignant neoplasm. Example 48: I (a) Hepatocellular carcinoma —(b) Hepatitis B virus Code to hepatocellular carcinoma (C22.0). Example 49: I (a) Burkitt's tumour —(b) Epstein Barr virus Code to Burkitt's tumour (C83.7). Example 50: I (a) Cholangiocarcinoma of liver —(b) Clonorchiasis Code to malignant neoplasm of intrahepatic bile duct (C22.1).</p> <p><i>J. Malignant neoplasms and circulatory disease</i></p> <p>The following acute or fatal circulatory diseases will be accepted in Part I as due to malignant neoplasms:</p> <p><u>4.2.7.1 Introduction</u></p> <p><u>Coding malignant neoplasms is no different from coding other conditions. The selection and modification rules should be applied as usual to death certificates mentioning malignant neoplasms, and as in all mortality coding, the coder has to take all information given on the Death Certificate into account when assigning ICD codes.</u></p> <p><u>For neoplasms, it is especially important to consider information on behaviour, morphology and site. When behaviour, morphology and site are well described by the physician, the coder will have no difficulty in finding the correct code for the term in Volume 3. However, the terms stated on the death certificate are not always complete or clear enough. These instructions will help coders to assign codes in such cases. They also show that the same selection and modification rules apply to death certificates mentioning malignant neoplasms as to deaths from other causes.</u></p> <p><u>(a) Behaviour, morphology and site</u></p> <p><u>Behaviour, morphology and site must all be considered when coding neoplasms. The behaviour of a neoplasm is the way it acts within the body, i.e., how a tumour is likely to develop. The following ICD grouping refers to behaviour:</u></p> <p><u>C00-C96 Malignant (invades surrounding tissue or disseminates from its point of origin and begins to grow at another site)</u> <u>D00-D09 In situ (malignant but still confined to the tissue in which it originated)</u> <u>D10-D36 Benign (grows in place without the potential for spread)</u></p>				
--	--	--	--	--	--

	<p><u>D37-D48 Uncertain or unknown behaviour (undetermined whether benign or malignant)</u></p> <p><u>Morphology describes the type and structure of cells or tissues and the behaviour of neoplasms. The ICD provides for classification of several major morphological groups including the following:</u></p> <p><u>Carcinomas, including squamous cell carcinoma and adenocarcinoma</u> <u>Sarcomas and other soft tissue tumours, including mesotheliomas</u> <u>Site-specific types that indicate the site of the primary neoplasm, such as hepatoma (C22.0)</u> <u>Lymphomas, including Hodgkin's lymphoma and non-Hodgkin's lymphoma</u> <u>Leukaemias</u> <u>Other specified morphological groups, such as malignant melanoma (C43.-)</u></p> <p><u>The ICD categories will give the <i>site</i> of the neoplasm, and also distinguish between the different behaviours of the neoplasms. The categories are:</u></p> <p><u>C00-C75 Malignant neoplasms, stated or presumed to be primary, of specified sites and in different types of tissue, except lymphoid, haematopoietic, and related tissue</u> <u>C76 Malignant neoplasms of other and ill-defined sites</u> <u>C77-C79 Malignant secondary neoplasms, stated or presumed to be spread from another site, regardless of morphological type of neoplasm</u> <u>Note: these categories (C77-C79) are not to be used for underlying cause of death</u> <u>C80 Malignant neoplasm of unspecified site</u> <u>C81-C96 Malignant neoplasms, stated or presumed to be primary, of lymphoid, haematopoietic, and related tissue</u></p> <p><u>(b) Using the Alphabetical Index</u></p> <p><u>The entry "Neoplasm" in the Volume 3 Alphabetical Index gives guidance notes, listing of sites, and up to five codes depending on the behaviour of the neoplasm. However, it is important to look up the morphological type in the Alphabetical Index before referring to the listing under "Neoplasm" for the site. The entry for the morphological type will either state a code to use, or direct you to the correct entry under the main term "Neoplasm".</u></p> <p><u>Not all combinations of prefixes in compound morphological terms are indexed. For example, the term chondrofibrosarcoma does not appear in the Alphabetical Index, but fibrochondrosarcoma does. Since the two terms have the same prefixes, though in a different order, code the chondrofibrosarcoma the same as fibrochondrosarcoma.</u></p> <p><u>Unless it is specifically indexed, code a morphological term ending in "osis" in the same way as the tumour name to which "osis" has been added. For example, code neuroblastomatosis</u></p>				
--	---	--	--	--	--

Revise spelling	<p><u>in the same way as neuroblastoma. However, do not code hemangiomatosis, which is specifically indexed to a different category, in the same way as hemangioma. Widespread metastasis of a carcinoma is often called carcinomatosis. See Sections 4.2.7.5 and 4.2.7.6 for more detailed coding instructions on metastasizing neoplasms.</u></p> <p><u>If an unqualified nonspecific term such as carcinoma or sarcoma appears with a term describing a more specific histology of the same broad group, code to the site of the more specific morphology, assuming the nonspecific to be metastatic.</u></p> <p><i>(c) Selection rules</i></p> <p><u>Note that a malignant neoplasm does not automatically take precedence over other causes of death mentioned on the death certificate. A death should be assigned to a malignant neoplasm only if the selection rules, strictly applied, lead to the selection of the neoplasm as the underlying cause of death.</u></p> <p><u>Example 1:</u></p> <table><tr><td>I (a)</td><td>Liver cirrhosis</td></tr><tr><td>(b)</td><td>Viral hepatitis</td></tr><tr><td>II</td><td>Hepatocellular carcinoma</td></tr></table> <p><u>Code to viral hepatitis (B19.9). Viral hepatitis is selected by the General Principle. It is not an obvious consequence of hepatocellular carcinoma, which should not be selected as the underlying cause of death.</u></p> <p><u>Example 2:</u></p> <table><tr><td>I (a)</td><td>Renal failure</td></tr><tr><td>(b)</td><td>Nephropathy</td></tr><tr><td>(c)</td><td>Diabetes mellitus</td></tr><tr><td>(d)</td><td>Malignant neoplasm of breast</td></tr></table> <p><u>Code to diabetes with renal complications (E14.2). According to the instruction on causes of diabetes in section 4.2.2, malignant neoplasm of breast is rejected as a cause of diabetes. Diabetes is selected as the underlying cause by Rule 1.</u></p> <p><u>4.2.7.2 Implication of malignancy</u></p> <p><u>A mention anywhere on the certificate that a neoplasm has produced secondaries means that the neoplasm must be coded as malignant, even though the neoplasm without mention of metastases would be classified differently.</u></p> <p><u>Example 3:</u></p> <table><tr><td>I (a)</td><td>Brain metastasis</td></tr></table>	I (a)	Liver cirrhosis	(b)	Viral hepatitis	II	Hepatocellular carcinoma	I (a)	Renal failure	(b)	Nephropathy	(c)	Diabetes mellitus	(d)	Malignant neoplasm of breast	I (a)	Brain metastasis	Germany (URC:1230)	October 2008	Major	January 2010
I (a)	Liver cirrhosis																				
(b)	Viral hepatitis																				
II	Hepatocellular carcinoma																				
I (a)	Renal failure																				
(b)	Nephropathy																				
(c)	Diabetes mellitus																				
(d)	Malignant neoplasm of breast																				
I (a)	Brain metastasis																				

	<p style="text-align: center;"><u>(b) Lung tumour</u></p> <p><u>Code to malignant lung cancer (C34.9). The lung tumour is considered malignant since it has produced brain metastases. The General Principle applies.</u></p> <p><u>Example 4: I (a) Metastatic involvement of chest wall</u> <u>(b) Carcinoma in situ of breast</u></p> <p><u>Code to malignant carcinoma of breast (C50.9). Since the breast tumour has spread to the chest wall it is no longer <i>in situ</i>, and it is considered malignant. The General Principle applies.</u></p> <p><u>This also applies to other types of growths that are not indexed to Chapter II, for example certain polyps. If they are reported as the cause of metastases or secondary tumours, they should be considered malignant and coded as malignant neoplasms.</u></p> <p><u>Example 5: I (a) Secondary malignant neoplasm of lung</u> <u>(b) Polyp of stomach</u></p> <p><u>Code to primary malignant neoplasm of stomach (C16.9). Since the polyp is reported as the cause of secondary spread it is considered malignant. The General Principle applies.</u></p> <p><u>4.2.7.3 Primary site</u></p> <p><u>When a malignant neoplasm is considered to be the underlying cause of death, it is most important to determine the primary site. When the death certificate is ambiguous as to the primary site, every effort should be made to obtain clarification from the certifier. The following instructions in Sections 4.2.7.3 - 4.2.7.9 should be applied only when clarification cannot be obtained.</u></p> <p><u>A. Primary site indicated</u></p> <p><u>(a) A neoplasm specified as primary</u></p> <p><u>If one malignant neoplasm is specified as primary, and other neoplasms are mentioned but not described as primary, then consider these other neoplasms as secondary. Also consider them as an obvious consequence of the neoplasm specified as primary.</u></p> <p><u>Example 6: I (a) Transitional cell carcinoma of bladder</u> <u>II Transitional cell carcinoma, primary in kidney</u></p>				
--	---	--	--	--	--

<p><u>The transitional cell bladder carcinoma on I (a), selected by the General Principle, is not specified as primary. There is a neoplasm described as primary reported in Part II. Therefore, Rule 3 applies, and the transitional cell bladder carcinoma on I (a) is considered an obvious consequence of the primary kidney tumour reported in Part II. Code to malignant neoplasm of kidney (C64).</u></p> <p><u>This does not apply if the neoplasms have different morphology.</u></p> <p><u>Example 7: I (a) Transitional cell carcinoma of bladder</u> <u> II Osteosarcoma, primary in knee</u></p> <p><u>The transitional cell bladder carcinoma on I (a) is not specified as primary. Use the General Principle to select transitional cell carcinoma of bladder as the temporary underlying cause of death. The malignant neoplasm reported in Part II is of a different morphology. Since a transitional cell carcinoma is not a consequence of an osteosarcoma, Rule 3 does not apply. Code to malignant neoplasm of bladder (C67.9).</u></p> <p><u>For further instructions on certificates with more than one neoplasm specified as primary, see Section C below.</u></p> <p><u>(b) Other neoplasms specified as secondary</u></p> <p><u>Secondary malignant neoplasms should be accepted as due to other malignant neoplasms. Also, malignant neoplasms on the list of common sites of metastases (see Section 4.2.7.5 Table 3), should be accepted as due to other malignant neoplasms.</u></p> <p><u>Example 8: I (a) Secondaries in lung, pleura, brain and liver</u> <u> (b) Carcinoma of breast</u></p> <p><u>A carcinoma of breast may cause secondaries in pleura, brain, and liver. The General Principle applies. Select malignant neoplasm of breast (C50.9) as the underlying cause of death.</u></p> <p><u>A malignant neoplasm specified as secondary should be considered an obvious consequence of a neoplasm specified as primary.</u></p> <p><u>Example 9: I (a) Secondary carcinoma of lung</u> <u> II Primary in kidney</u></p> <p><u>First, use the General Principle to select secondary carcinoma of lung as the temporary underlying cause. However, the secondary neoplasm is an obvious consequence of the</u></p>			
---	--	--	--

	<p><u>primary kidney tumour. Rule 3 applies, and malignant neoplasm of kidney (C64) is selected as underlying cause of death.</u></p> <p><u>Also, if all sites but one are specified as secondary, consider the site not specified as secondary as the primary one. Consequently, Rule 3 applies.</u></p> <p><u>Example 10: I (a) Secondaries in lymph nodes, vertebrae and peritoneum</u> <u>II Prostate cancer</u></p> <p><u>All sites mentioned in Part I are specified as secondary. There is one site reported that is not specified as secondary, namely prostate. First, apply Rule 2 to select the secondary neoplasm in lymph nodes as the temporary underlying cause. Then apply Rule 3, since the secondary spread is an obvious consequence of prostate cancer reported in Part II. Select malignant neoplasm of prostate (C61) as the underlying cause of death.</u></p> <p><u>(c) A neoplasm reported as due to a disease that increases the risk of malignancy</u></p> <p><u>When a malignant neoplasm is reported as caused by a condition generally considered to increase the risk of a malignancy of that site, code the neoplasm as primary. This applies even if the site is on the list of common sites of metastases (see Table 3 in Section 4.2.7.5).</u></p> <p><u>Example 11: I (a) Cancer of liver and lung</u> <u>(b) Chronic hepatitis</u></p> <p><u>Code to unspecified malignant neoplasm of liver (C22.9), since chronic hepatitis increases the risk of primary liver cancer.</u></p> <p><u>Example 12: I (a) Cancer of lung</u> <u>(b) Cancer of liver</u> <u>(c) Prolonged exposure to vinyl chloride</u></p> <p><u>Code to unspecified malignant neoplasm of liver (C22.9), since vinyl chloride increases the risk of primary liver cancer. Using section 4.2.7.5, the cancer of lung is regarded as secondary.</u></p> <p><u>Example 13: I (a) Cancer of chest wall</u> <u>(b) Cancer of lung</u> <u>(c) Smoking</u></p> <p><u>Code to malignant neoplasm of bronchus or lung, unspecified (C34.9). Tobacco increases</u></p>				
--	---	--	--	--	--

	<p><u>the risk of primary lung cancer. Using section 4.2.7.5, the cancer of chest wall is considered secondary.</u></p> <p><u>Example 14:</u> I (a) Mesothelioma of pleura and lymph nodes (b) Prolonged inhalation of asbestos dust</p> <p><u>Code to mesothelioma of pleura (C45.0). Exposure to asbestos increases the risk of pleural mesothelioma, which is considered primary. The malignant neoplasm of lymph nodes is considered secondary (see Section 4.2.7.5 D).</u></p> <p><u>Example 15:</u> I (a) Malignant neoplasm of mediastinum and liver (b) Prolonged inhalation of asbestos dust</p> <p><u>Code to malignant neoplasm of mediastinum (C38.3). Exposure to asbestos increases the risk of cancer in the mediastinum, and the liver neoplasm is considered secondary.</u></p> <p><u>For further information on conditions considered to increase the risk of malignancy, please refer to the WHO website on ICD-10 in classification of mortality.</u></p> <p><u>(d) Site-specific morphology</u></p> <p><u>Note that the Alphabetical Index assigns some morphologies to a specific primary site:</u></p> <p><u>Example 16:</u> I (a) Generalised metastatic spread (b) Pseudomucinous adenocarcinoma</p> <p><u>Select pseudomucinous adenocarcinoma using the General Principle. Code to malignant neoplasm of ovary (C56), since pseudomucinous adenocarcinoma of unspecified site is assigned to the ovary in the Alphabetical Index.</u></p> <p><u>If two or more morphologies are indicated, code according to Section 4.2.7.3 C.</u></p> <p><u>(e) Durations do not indicate primary site</u></p> <p><u>Durations should not be used to establish the primary site, since the same patient could develop several primary malignant neoplasms. Also, stated duration may refer to the date of diagnosis rather than the duration of the disease.</u></p> <p><u>Example 17:</u> I (a) Malignant neoplasm of throat 8 months II Malignant neoplasm of breast 12 years</p>				
--	--	--	--	--	--

	<p><u>A condition selected by the General Principle or Rules 1 or 2 should be considered an obvious consequence of a condition reported elsewhere on the certificate only if there is no doubt about the relationship. In this case, the different durations do not necessarily indicate that the malignant neoplasm of throat is a metastatic spread from the breast malignancy, since the patient may have developed two independent primary malignancies. Consequently, Rule 3 does not apply. Code to malignant neoplasm of throat (C14.0) selected by the General Principle.</u></p> <p><u>Example 18: I (a) Malignant neoplasm of kidney (7 months) and of prostate (5 years)</u></p> <p><u>As in Example 15, the different durations do not necessarily indicate that the more recent neoplasm is a metastatic spread from the one with longer duration. Rule 3 does not apply. Both malignant neoplasms are considered primary. Code to malignant neoplasm of kidney (C64), selected by Rule 2.</u></p> <p><u>B. Primary site unknown</u></p> <p><u>If the certificate states that the primary site is unknown, code to the category for unspecified site for the morphological type involved. For example, code adenocarcinoma to C80.0, fibrosarcoma to C49.9, and osteosarcoma to C41.9. Disregard any other sites mentioned elsewhere on the certificate.</u></p> <p><u>Example 19: I (a) Secondary carcinoma of liver</u> <u>(b) Primary site unknown</u> <u>(c) ? stomach ? colon</u></p> <p><u>The certificate states that the primary site is unknown. Disregard stomach and colon mentioned on line I (c), and code to carcinoma without specification of site (C80.0).</u></p> <p><u>Example 20: I (a) Generalized metastases</u> <u>(b) Melanoma</u> <u>(c) Primary site unknown</u></p> <p><u>Code to malignant melanoma of unspecified site (C43.9).</u></p> <p><u>If the morphological type is not indicated, code to unspecified malignant neoplasm (C80.9):</u></p> <p><u>Example 21: I (a) Metastases of liver</u></p> <p><u>The certificate does not specify the primary site. If possible, clarification should be sought</u></p>				
--	---	--	--	--	--

<p><u>from the certifier. If this is not possible, code to malignant neoplasm of unspecified site (C80.9).</u></p> <p><u>C. More than one primary neoplasm</u></p> <p><u>The presence of more than one primary neoplasm could be indicated in several ways, for example:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>mention of two or more different anatomical sites</u> • <u>two or more distinct morphological types</u> • <u>by a mix of a morphological type that implies a specific site, plus another site</u> <p><u>When a death certificate mentions more than one primary malignant neoplasm, the certifier should be asked to specify one of the malignant neoplasms as the underlying cause of death. If no clarification can be obtained, the selection rules should be applied in the usual way.</u></p> <p><u>(a) Two or more different anatomical sites</u></p> <p><u>A primary malignant neoplasm of one site should not be accepted as due to a primary neoplasm of another site.</u></p> <p><u>Example 22: I (a) Cancer of stomach</u> <u>(b) Cancer of breast</u></p> <p><u>Stomach is not on the list of common sites of metastases (see Section 4.2.7.5 Table 3) and both cancer of stomach and cancer of breast are regarded as primary. However, one primary malignant neoplasm is not accepted as due to another. Rule 2 applies, and cancer of stomach (C16.9) is selected as the underlying cause.</u></p> <p><u>Example 23: I (a) Cancer of prostate</u> <u>II Cancer of stomach</u></p> <p><u>Two different primary neoplasms are mentioned, stomach cancer and cancer of prostate. Use the General Principle to select cancer of prostate (C61), which is mentioned in Part I.</u></p> <p><u>Example 24: I (a) Cancer</u></p>				
--	--	--	--	--

	<p style="text-align: center;"><u>II Cancer of prostate</u></p> <p><u>Use the General Principle to select unspecified cancer (C80.9) as the temporary underlying cause. Then apply Rule D, Specificity, to select the more specific term “cancer of prostate” (C61), reported in Part II.</u></p> <p><u>(b) Two or more different morphologies</u></p> <p><u>A malignant neoplasm of a specific morphology should not be accepted as due to a neoplasm of a different morphology.</u></p> <p><u>Example 25: I (a) Hypernephroma</u> <u> (b) Oat cell carcinoma</u></p> <p><u>Hypernephroma and oat cell carcinoma are different morphologies. Therefore, hypernephroma is not accepted as due to oat cell carcinoma. Use Rule 2 to select hypernephroma (C64) as underlying cause of death.</u></p> <p><u>Do not regard the term “cancer” as a specific morphology. It is often used as a synonym of “malignant neoplasm”.</u></p> <p><u>Example 26: I (a) Liver cancer</u> <u> (b) Malignant melanoma of colon</u></p> <p><u>Do not regard “liver cancer” and “malignant melanoma” as different morphologies. Use the General Principle to select malignant melanoma of colon, and code to malignant neoplasm of colon (C18.9). Consider the liver cancer secondary.</u></p> <p><u>However, a neoplasm in lymphoid, haematopoietic or related tissue (C81-C96) may develop into another type of neoplasm in lymphoid, haematopoietic or related tissue. Therefore, if the certificate reports a sequence of such neoplasms, the sequence is accepted.</u></p> <p><u>Example 27: I (a) Acute lymphocytic leukaemia</u> <u> (b) Non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma</u></p> <p><u>A non-Hodgkin lymphoma may develop into an acute lymphocytic leukemia. The sequence is accepted, and non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma (C85.9) is selected as underlying cause according to the General Principle.</u></p> <p><u>Acute exacerbation of, or blastic crisis (acute) in, chronic leukaemia is considered an</u></p>				
--	--	--	--	--	--

	<p><u>obvious consequence of the chronic form.</u></p> <p><u>Example 28: I (a) Acute and chronic lymphocytic leukaemia</u></p> <p><u>The acute lymphocytic leukemia, mentioned first on line I (a), is selected as the temporary underlying cause according to Rule 2. However, it is an obvious consequence of the chronic lymphocytic leukaemia. Rule 3 also applies, and chronic lymphocytic leukaemia (C911) is selected as the underlying cause of death.</u></p> <p><u>(c) Site-specific morphology reported with other sites</u></p> <p><u>Some morphologies are specific for a particular site or type of tissue (see the Alphabetical Index). A malignant neoplasm of a particular site or tissue should not be accepted as due to a neoplasm of another site or type of tissue. Apply the selection rules in the usual way, if a site-specific morphology is reported with a malignant neoplasm of another site.</u></p> <p><u>Example 29: I (a) Hodgkin's disease-lymphoma</u> <u>(b) Carcinoma of bladder</u></p> <p><u>Two different morphological types are mentioned, which indicates the presence of two different primary neoplasms, Hodgkin's disease lymphoma and bladder carcinoma. One primary malignant neoplasm should not be accepted as due to another. Therefore, Rule 2 applies, and Hodgkin's disease lymphoma (C81.9) is selected as the underlying cause.</u></p> <p><u>Example 30: I (a) Hepatoma</u> <u>(b) Cancer of breast</u></p> <p><u>The morphology "hepatoma" indicates a primary malignant neoplasm of liver. A primary malignant neoplasm of liver should not be accepted as due to cancer of breast, since both the hepatoma and the breast cancer are considered primary. Code to hepatoma (C22.0), using Rule 2.</u></p> <p><u>4.2.7.4 Malignant neoplasms of overlapping sites</u></p> <p><u>The introduction to Chapter II in Volume 1 (Notes, Section 5) describe the contents and the intended use of subcategory .8, malignant neoplasms of overlapping sites. In mortality coding, however, the codes for malignant neoplasms of overlapping sites should be used only if the lesion has been expressly described as overlapping, or if the anatomical term used on the death certificate indicates an overlapping site. Do not use the codes for overlapping lesions if a malignant neoplasm has spread from one part of an organ or organ system to</u></p>				
--	--	--	--	--	--

<p><u>another part of the same organ or organ system.</u></p> <p><u>Example 31: I (a) Overlapping malignant neoplasm of tongue and floor of mouth</u></p> <p><u>Code to C14.8, overlapping lesion of lip, oral cavity and pharynx. The neoplasm is described as overlapping.</u></p> <p><u>Example 32: I (a) Malignant neoplasm of rectosigmoid colon</u></p> <p><u>Code to C19, malignant neoplasm of rectosigmoid junction. The term “rectosigmoid” indicates an overlapping site.</u></p> <p><u>It is not sufficient that the certificate enumerates contiguous sites. In that case, select the underlying cause by applying the selection and modification rules in the normal way.</u></p> <p><u>Example 33: I (a) Malignant neoplasm of colon and gallbladder</u></p> <p><u>There is no statement that the “colon and gallbladder” refers to an overlapping neoplasm. Therefore, they are considered as two independent primary sites. Malignant neoplasm of colon (C18.9) is selected as underlying cause of death according to Rule 2, since it is mentioned first on the certificate.</u></p> <p><u>4.2.7.5. Common sites of metastases</u></p> <p><u>A. List of common sites of metastases</u></p> <p><u>Although malignant cells can metastasize anywhere in the body, certain sites are more common than others and must be treated differently. These sites are listed in Table 3 below.</u></p> <p>.....</p> <p><u>Table 3. Common sites of metastases</u></p> <table><tr><td><u>Bone</u></td><td><u>Mediastinum</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>Brain</u></td><td><u>Meninges</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>Diaphragm</u></td><td><u>Peritoneum</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>Ill-defined sites (sites classifiable to C76)</u></td><td><u>Pleura</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>Liver</u></td><td><u>Retroperitoneum</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>Lung (see special instruction)</u></td><td><u>Spinal cord</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>Lymph nodes (see special instruction)</u></td><td></td></tr></table> <p><u>B. Common sites of metastases: how to use the list</u></p>	<u>Bone</u>	<u>Mediastinum</u>	<u>Brain</u>	<u>Meninges</u>	<u>Diaphragm</u>	<u>Peritoneum</u>	<u>Ill-defined sites (sites classifiable to C76)</u>	<u>Pleura</u>	<u>Liver</u>	<u>Retroperitoneum</u>	<u>Lung (see special instruction)</u>	<u>Spinal cord</u>	<u>Lymph nodes (see special instruction)</u>					
<u>Bone</u>	<u>Mediastinum</u>																	
<u>Brain</u>	<u>Meninges</u>																	
<u>Diaphragm</u>	<u>Peritoneum</u>																	
<u>Ill-defined sites (sites classifiable to C76)</u>	<u>Pleura</u>																	
<u>Liver</u>	<u>Retroperitoneum</u>																	
<u>Lung (see special instruction)</u>	<u>Spinal cord</u>																	
<u>Lymph nodes (see special instruction)</u>																		

Revise spelling	<p><u>(a) A common site of metastases reported with other sites</u></p> <p><u>If several sites are reported on the death certificate and the primary site is not indicated, consider neoplasms of sites in Table 3 as secondary, and those not in Table 3 as primary. Then select the underlying cause by applying the selection rules in the usual way.</u></p> <p><u>Example 34: I (a) Brain cancer</u> <u>(b) Cancer of breast</u></p> <p><u>Breast is not in Table 3 and is, therefore, considered primary. Brain is in Table 3 and is considered secondary. A secondary malignancy could, of course, be due to a primary one. Breast cancer (C50.9) is selected as the underlying cause according to the General Principle.</u></p> <p><u>Example 35: I (a) Peritoneal cancer</u> <u>II Cancer of breast</u></p> <p><u>Peritoneum is in Table 3 and is considered secondary. Breast is not in Table 3 and is considered primary. First, apply the General Principle to select peritoneal cancer as the temporary underlying cause. However, the (secondary) peritoneal cancer is an obvious consequence of the (primary) cancer of breast, see Section 4.2.7.3 A (b). Therefore, apply Rule 3 and select cancer of breast (C50.9) as the underlying cause of death.</u></p> <p><u>Example 36: I (a) Cancer of liver</u> <u>(b) Cancer of colon</u> <u>(c) Cancer of bladder</u></p> <p><u>Liver is in Table 3 and is considered secondary. Colon and bladder are not in Table 3 and are both assumed to be primary. However, a primary cancer of colon should not be accepted as due to a primary cancer of bladder. There is still an acceptable sequence on the certificate, namely (secondary) liver cancer due to (primary) cancer of colon. Use Rule 1 to select malignant neoplasm of colon (C18.9) as underlying cause of death.</u></p> <p><u>Note:</u></p> <p><u>1) A neoplasm of a site listed in Table 3 is considered primary when it is reported as due to a condition that increases the risk of a malignancy of that site or tissue, see Section 4.2.7.3 A (c).</u></p> <p><u>2) When a malignant neoplasm of one of the sites listed in Table 3 is the only malignant neoplasm mentioned on a death certificate, and it is not qualified as “metastatic”, it is also</u></p>	Germany 1230	October 2008	Major	January 2010
		Germany 1230	October 2008	Major	January 2010

Revise text	<p><u>considered primary.</u></p> <p><u>(b) A common site of metastases reported with other morphological types</u></p> <p><u>If a neoplasm of a site in Table 3 is reported together with a neoplasm of a different morphology, consider the neoplasm in Table 3 as secondary, and those of a different morphology as primary. Then select the underlying cause by applying the selection rules in the usual way.</u></p> <p><u>Example 37: I (a) Liver cancer</u> <u>(b) Adenocarcinoma of colon</u> <u>(c) Malignant melanoma of skin of thigh</u></p> <p><u>Liver is in Table 3 and is considered secondary. Colon and skin are not in Table 3 and are both assumed to be primary. However, the colon and skin malignancies are of different morphology. Consequently, adenocarcinoma of colon is not accepted as due to malignant melanoma of intestine. A (secondary) liver cancer, however, can be due to adenocarcinoma of colon, so there is a sequence ending with the liver cancer reported on line I (a). Malignant neoplasm of colon is selected as underlying cause according to Rule 1.</u></p> <p><u>Do not regard “liver cancer” as a separate morphology, see Section 4.2.7.3 C (b).</u></p> <p><u>(c) All reported sites are on the list of common sites of metastases</u></p> <p><u>If all reported sites are in Table 3, they should all be considered secondary. This means that no primary tumour is reported, and the case should be coded to malignant neoplasm of unspecified site (C80.9).</u></p> <p><u>Example 38: I (a) Cancer of brain, ribs, pleura, and peritoneum</u></p> <p><u>The sites mentioned are all in Table 3 and are all considered secondary. Code the case to malignant neoplasm of unspecified site (C80.9).</u></p> <p><u>Note that special instructions apply to cases where lung is reported with other sites listed in Table 3. See Section 4.2.7.5 C.</u></p> <p><u>C. Special instruction: lung</u></p> <p><u>The lung poses special problems in that it is a common site for both metastases and primary</u></p>				
-------------	---	--	--	--	--

<p><u>malignant neoplasms. It is considered primary or secondary, depending on other neoplasms reported on the certificate, if any.</u></p> <p><i>(a) Lung considered a primary neoplasm</i></p> <p><u>If lung is the only site mentioned on the certificate, it is considered primary.</u></p> <p><u>Example 39: I (a) Lung cancer</u></p> <p><u>Lung is the only site mentioned, and therefore lung is considered primary. The General Principle applies and carcinoma of lung (C34.9) is selected as the underlying cause of death.</u></p> <p><u>Also, if all other sites are in Table 3, lung is considered primary.</u></p> <p><u>Example 40: I (a) Cancer of liver</u> <u>(b) Carcinoma of lung</u></p> <p><u>Liver is in Table 3, and therefore lung is considered primary. The General Principle applies and carcinoma of lung (C34.9) is selected as the underlying cause of death.</u></p> <p><u>When a malignant neoplasm of bronchus or bronchogenic cancer is mentioned, this neoplasm should also be considered primary.</u></p> <p><u>Example 41: I (a) Carcinoma of bronchus</u> <u>(b) Carcinoma of breast</u></p> <p><u>Neither bronchus nor breast are in Table 3, and therefore both are considered primary. One primary neoplasm is not accepted as due to another, and therefore Rule 2 applies. Select malignant neoplasm of bronchus (C34.9) as underlying cause of death.</u></p> <p><u>Note: A neoplasm of lung is considered primary when it is reported as due to a condition that increases the risk of lung cancer, see Section 4.2.7.3 A (c).</u></p> <p><i>(b) Lung considered a secondary neoplasm</i></p> <p><u>If an unspecified malignant neoplasm of lung is reported as due to another malignant neoplasm, the lung neoplasm is considered secondary and the sequence accepted.</u></p> <p><u>Example 42: I (a) Lung cancer</u> <u>(b) Stomach cancer</u></p>				
---	--	--	--	--

	<p><u>Stomach cancer is selected by the General Principle, since (secondary) lung cancer is accepted as due to the stomach cancer.</u></p> <p><u>Lung should also be considered secondary whenever it appears in Part I with sites that are not mentioned in Table 3.</u></p> <p><u>Example 43: I (a) Carcinoma of lung and breast</u></p> <p><u>Lung carcinoma is considered secondary since it is reported with breast, which is not in Table 3. Rule 3 applies, and the secondary lung carcinoma is considered an obvious consequence of the carcinoma of breast. Code to malignant neoplasm of breast (C50.9).</u></p> <p><u>Note: A neoplasm of lung is considered primary when it is reported as due to a condition that increases the risk of lung cancer, see Section 4.2.7.3 A (c).</u></p> <p><u>An unspecified malignant neoplasm of lung should not be considered an obvious consequence of a malignant neoplasm reported elsewhere on the death certificate.</u></p> <p><u>Example 44: I (a) Lung cancer</u> <u>II Stomach cancer</u></p> <p><u>The lung cancer is not specified as either secondary or metastatic. Therefore, it is not considered an obvious consequence of stomach cancer reported in Part II, and Rule 3 does not apply. Select lung cancer (C34.9) as underlying cause of death, according to the General Principle.</u></p> <p><u>D. Special instruction: lymph node</u></p> <p><u>Malignant neoplasm of lymph nodes not specified as primary should be assumed to be secondary.</u></p> <p><u>Example 45: I (a) Cancer of cervical lymph nodes</u></p> <p><u>Code to malignant neoplasm of unspecified site, (C80.9). The cancer of cervical lymph nodes is considered secondary to an unspecified primary malignant neoplasm.</u></p> <p><u>4.2.7.6 Metastatic cancer</u></p> <p><u>Note: The expression "metastatic" is a problem mainly in the English language. Other</u></p>				
--	--	--	--	--	--

	<p><u>countries should translate only as much as needed of Section 4.2.7.6.</u></p> <p><u>Neoplasms qualified as metastatic are always malignant, either primary or secondary. However, the adjective "metastatic" is used in two ways, sometimes meaning a secondary from a primary elsewhere and sometimes denoting a primary that has given rise to metastases.</u></p> <p><u>(a) Malignant neoplasm "metastatic from"</u></p> <p><u>If a malignant neoplasm is described as "metastatic from" a specified site, that site should be considered primary.</u></p> <p><u>Example 46: I (a) Metastatic teratoma from ovary</u></p> <p><u>The expression "metastaticteratoma from ovary" implies that the neoplasm originated in the ovary. Code to malignant neoplasm of ovary (C56).</u></p> <p><u>This also applies to sites on the list of common sites of metastases.</u></p> <p><u>Example 47: I (a) Metastatic mesothelioma from peritoneum</u></p> <p><u>A "metastatic mesothelioma from peritoneum" is primary in the peritoneum, although peritoneum is one of the sites listed in Table 3. Code to malignant mesothelioma of peritoneum (C45.1).</u></p> <p><u>(b) Malignant neoplasm "metastatic to"</u></p> <p><u>A malignant neoplasm described as "metastatic to" a specified site should be interpreted as a secondary neoplasm of the specified site, whether the site is on the list of common sites of metastases or not. Code to malignant neoplasm of unknown primary site (C80.9) if no primary site is indicated.</u></p> <p><u>Example 48: I (a) Metastatic carcinoma to the rectum</u></p> <p><u>The expression "metastatic to" indicates that rectum is a secondary site. Code malignant neoplasm of unknown primary site (C80.9) as underlying cause of death, since no primary site is indicated</u></p> <p><u>If a morphology classifiable to C40-C47, C49, or C70-C72 is reported, code to the "unspecified site" subcategory of that morphological type.</u></p>				
--	---	--	--	--	--

	<p><u>Example 49: I (a) Metastatic osteosarcoma to brain</u></p> <p><u>The expression “metastatic to brain” indicates that brain is a secondary site. However, the osteosarcoma is indexed to malignant neoplasm of bone in the Alphabetical Index. Code unspecified malignant neoplasm of bone (C41.9) as underlying cause of death.</u></p> <p><u>(c) Malignant neoplasm metastatic of site A to site B</u></p> <p><u>A malignant neoplasm described as metastatic of site A to site B should be interpreted as primary of site A and secondary of site B.</u></p> <p><u>Example 50: I (a) Metastatic cancer of liver to brain</u> <u>II Oesophageal cancer</u></p> <p><u>The expression “metastatic of liver to brain” indicates that the malignancy originated in the liver and spread to the brain. When selecting the underlying cause of death, code to primary cancer of liver (C22.9).</u></p> <p><u>Since there is an indication that liver is the primary site, the instructions in Section 4.2.7.5 B (a) on sites in Table 3 reported with other sites do not apply. Liver is still considered the primary site, even though oesophageal cancer is also mentioned.</u></p> <p><u>(d) “Metastatic” malignant neoplasm on the list of common sites of metastases</u></p> <p><u>A “metastatic” neoplasm is considered secondary if the site is on the list of common sites of metastases.</u></p> <p><u>Example 51: I (a) Bowel obstruction</u> <u>(b) Metastatic cancer of peritoneum</u> <u>(c) Sarcoma of uterus</u></p> <p><u>Metastatic cancer of peritoneum is considered secondary, since peritoneum is in Table 3. Sarcoma of uterus (C55) is selected as underlying cause by the General Principle.</u></p> <p><u>Use Rule 3 if applicable.</u></p> <p><u>Example 52: I (a) Metastatic cancer of pleura</u> <u>II Cancer of stomach</u></p>				
--	---	--	--	--	--

	<p><u>The pleura cancer is described as metastatic and is considered secondary. Stomach cancer is also reported and is considered primary (see Section 4.2.7.3 A (b)). First, apply the General Principle to select the pleural cancer as the temporary underlying cause. However, (secondary) pleura cancer is considered an obvious consequence of (primary) stomach cancer, according to Rule 3. Stomach cancer (C16.9) is selected as underlying cause of death.</u></p> <p><u>A neoplasm of a site in Table 3 is considered secondary, even if no other neoplasm is mentioned on the certificate. Note that a secondary malignant neoplasm should not be selected as the underlying cause of death. If no primary tumour is reported, code the case to malignant neoplasm of unspecified site (C80.9).</u></p> <p><u>Example 53: I (a) Metastatic brain cancer</u></p> <p><u>Brain is one of the sites in Table 3, and the “metastatic” brain cancer is considered secondary. There is no primary neoplasm reported. Therefore, code to malignant neoplasm of unknown primary site (C80.9).</u></p> <p><u>Note: A neoplasm of a site listed in Table 3 is considered primary when it is reported as due to a condition that increases the risk of a malignancy of that site or tissue, see Section 4.2.7.3 A (c).</u></p> <p><u>(e) “Metastatic” malignant neoplasm not on the list of common sites of metastases</u></p> <p><u>If a site that is not on the list of common sites of metastases is qualified as “metastatic” or “metastatic of”, consider it primary and code to malignant primary of that particular site.</u></p> <p><u>Example 54: I (a) Cervix cancer, metastatic</u></p> <p><u>Cervix is not in Table 3, and the “metastatic” cervix cancer is therefore considered primary. Code to malignant neoplasm of cervix (C53.9).</u></p> <p><u>Apply the selection rules in the usual way.</u></p> <p><u>Example 55: I (a) Metastatic adenocarcinoma of prostate</u> <u>(b) Metastatic adenocarcinoma of colon</u></p> <p><u>Prostate and colon are not in Table 3, and both neoplasms are considered primary. One primary neoplasm is not accepted as due to another. Rule 2 applies, and malignant neoplasm of prostate (C61) is selected as underlying cause.</u></p>				
--	---	--	--	--	--

	<p><u>(f) “Metastatic” cancer of lung</u></p> <p><u>If the only malignancy mentioned is “metastatic” neoplasm of lung, code to primary malignant neoplasm of lung.</u></p> <p><u>Example 56: I (a) Metastatic carcinoma of lung</u></p> <p><u>Code to primary malignant neoplasm of lung (C34.9) since no other site is mentioned.</u></p> <p><u>Also consider a “metastatic” neoplasm of lung primary, if all other neoplasm sites reported on the death certificate are on the list of common sites of metastases.</u></p> <p><u>Example 57: I (a) Metastatic cancer of lung</u> <u>II Cancer of pleura, liver and brain</u></p> <p><u>“Metastatic cancer of lung” is considered primary, since pleura, liver, and brain are all in Table 3. Select malignant neoplasm of lung (C34.9) as underlying cause of death.</u></p> <p><u>If another malignancy is mentioned that is not on the list of common sites of metastases, consider lung secondary.</u></p> <p><u>Example 58: I (a) Metastatic cancer of lung</u> <u>II Stomach cancer</u></p> <p><u>Since stomach cancer is also mentioned, “metastatic cancer of lung” is considered secondary. First use the General Principle to select the (secondary) lung cancer as the temporary underlying cause. Then apply Rule 3, and consider (secondary) cancer of lung an obvious consequence of the stomach cancer mentioned in Part II. Select stomach cancer (C16.9) as the underlying cause of death.</u></p> <p><u>Note: A neoplasm of lung is considered primary when it is reported as due to a condition that increases the risk of lung cancer, see Section 4.2.7.3 A (c).</u></p> <p><u>(g) “Metastatic” neoplasm of a specific morphology</u></p> <p><u>If the morphological type is classifiable to C40-C47, C49, or C70-C72 and the site reported on the certificate indicates the same type of tissue, code to the appropriate subcategory for the morphological type.</u></p> <p><u>Example 59: I (a) Metastatic osteosarcoma of femur</u></p>				
--	--	--	--	--	--

	<p><u>Code to malignant neoplasm of long bones of lower limb (C40.2).</u></p> <p><u>If the morphological type is classifiable to C40-C47, C49, or C70-C72 and the site reported on the certificate indicates a different type of tissue, code to the unspecified site for the morphological type.</u></p> <hr/> <p><u>Example 60: I (a) Metastatic rhabdomyosarcoma</u> <u>(b) of hilar lymph nodes</u></p> <hr/> <p><u>Code to unspecified site for rhabdomyosarcoma (C49.9).</u></p> <p><u>4.2.7.7 Sites with prefixes or imprecise definitions</u></p> <p><u>Neoplasms of sites prefixed by "peri," "para," "pre," "supra," "infra," etc. or described as in the "area" or "region" of a site, unless these terms are specifically indexed, should be coded as follows:</u></p> <p><u>For malignant neoplasms classifiable to one of the categories</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <u>- C40, C41 (bone and articular cartilage),</u> <u>- C43 (malignant melanoma of skin),</u> <u>- C44 (other malignant neoplasms of skin),</u> <u>- C45 (mesothelioma),</u> <u>- C46 (Kaposi's sarcoma)</u> <u>- C47 (peripheral nerves and autonomic nervous system),</u> <u>- C49 (connective and soft tissue),</u> <u>- C70 (meninges),</u> <u>- C71 (brain),</u> <u>- C72 (other parts of central nervous system),</u> <p><u>code to the appropriate subdivision of that category</u></p> <p><u>Example 61: I (a) Fibrosarcoma in the region of the pancreas</u></p> <p><u>Code to malignant neoplasm of connective and soft tissue of abdomen (C49.4).</u></p> <p><u>Example 62: I (a) Peridiaphragmatic angiomyosarcoma</u></p> <p><u>Code to malignant neoplasm of connective and soft tissue of thorax (C49.3).</u></p> <p><u>For other morphological types code to the appropriate subdivision of C76 (other and ill-defined sites).</u></p>				
--	---	--	--	--	--

	<p><u>Example 63: I (a) Carcinoma in the lung area</u></p> <p><u>Code to malignant neoplasm of other and ill-defined sites within the thorax. (C76.1)</u></p> <p><u>Example 64: I (a) Paravertebral carcinoma</u></p> <p><u>Code to malignant neoplasm of other ill-defined sites (C76.7).</u></p> <p><u>Example 65: I (a) Malignant neoplasm, infradiaphragmal</u></p> <p><u>Code to malignant neoplasm of abdomen (C76.2).</u></p> <p><u>4.2.7.8 Malignant neoplasms of unspecified site with other reported conditions</u></p> <p><u>When the site of a primary malignant neoplasm is not specified, no assumption of the site should be made from the location of other reported conditions such as perforation, obstruction, or haemorrhage. These conditions may arise in sites unrelated to the neoplasm, e.g. intestinal obstruction may be caused by the spread of an ovarian malignancy.</u></p> <p><u>Example 66: I (a) Obstruction of intestine</u> <u>(b) Carcinoma</u></p> <p><u>Code to malignant neoplasm without specification of site (C80.9).</u></p> <p><u>Example 67: I (a) Respiratory insufficiency</u> <u>(b) Obstruction of trachea</u> <u>(c) Malignancy</u></p> <p><u>Code to malignant neoplasm without specification of site (C80.9).</u></p> <p><u>4.2.7.9 Infectious diseases and malignant neoplasms</u></p> <p><u>(a) Infections due to malignant neoplasm</u></p> <p><u>Owing to the effect of chemotherapy on the immune system, some cancer patients become prone to infectious diseases and die of them. Therefore, any infectious disease classified to A00-B19 or B25-B64 reported as "due to" cancer will be an acceptable sequence.</u></p> <p><u>Example 68: I (a) Zoster</u> <u>(b) Chronic lymphocytic leukaemia</u></p>				
--	--	--	--	--	--

<p><u>Chronic lymphocytic leukaemia could cause a zoster infection. The sequence is accepted, and chronic lymphocytic leukaemia (C91.1) is selected as the underlying cause of death.</u></p> <p><u>(b) Malignant neoplasm due to infections</u></p> <p><u>There is evidence for strong aetiological links between some infections and particular cancers, e.g., human papilloma virus and cervical cancer, or chronic hepatitis C viral infection and liver cancer. However, reporting of such risk factors on death certificates is incomplete. For purposes of vital statistics and public health it is regarded as important to be able to count all the deaths due to particular cancers, whatever their causal factors. Therefore, except for human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease, no infectious or parasitic disease should be accepted as causing a malignant neoplasm.</u></p> <p><u>Example 69: I (a) Hepatocellular carcinoma</u> <u>(b) Hepatitis B virus</u></p> <p><u>Hepatitis B increases the risk of liver cancer. However, it is considered more important to register the number of liver cancer deaths, and the sequence is not accepted. Use Rule 2 to select hepatocellular carcinoma (C22.0) as underlying cause of death.</u></p> <p><u>Example 70: I (a) Kaposi's sarcoma</u> <u>(b) HIV</u></p> <p><u>HIV is accepted as causing malignant neoplasms. First, use the General Principle to select HIV as the temporary underlying cause. Then use Rule C (Linkage) to code HIV disease resulting in Kaposi's sarcoma (B21.0) as underlying cause of death.</u></p> <p><u>4.2.7.10 Malignant neoplasms and circulatory disease</u></p> <p><u>The following acute or fatal circulatory diseases will be accepted as due to malignant neoplasms, if certified in a "due to" sequence in Part I:</u></p> <table><tr><td>I21-I22</td><td>Acute myocardial infarction</td></tr><tr><td>I24.-</td><td>Other acute ischaemic heart diseases</td></tr><tr><td>I26.-</td><td>Pulmonary embolism</td></tr><tr><td>I30.-</td><td>Acute pericarditis</td></tr><tr><td>I33.-</td><td>Acute and subacute endocarditis</td></tr><tr><td>I40.-</td><td>Acute myocarditis</td></tr><tr><td>I44.-</td><td>Atrioventricular and left bundle-branch block</td></tr><tr><td>I45.-</td><td>Other conduction disorders</td></tr></table>	I21-I22	Acute myocardial infarction	I24.-	Other acute ischaemic heart diseases	I26.-	Pulmonary embolism	I30.-	Acute pericarditis	I33.-	Acute and subacute endocarditis	I40.-	Acute myocarditis	I44.-	Atrioventricular and left bundle-branch block	I45.-	Other conduction disorders				
I21-I22	Acute myocardial infarction																			
I24.-	Other acute ischaemic heart diseases																			
I26.-	Pulmonary embolism																			
I30.-	Acute pericarditis																			
I33.-	Acute and subacute endocarditis																			
I40.-	Acute myocarditis																			
I44.-	Atrioventricular and left bundle-branch block																			
I45.-	Other conduction disorders																			

	<p>I46.- Cardiac arrest I47.- Paroxysmal tachycardia I48 Atrial fibrillation and flutter I49.- Other cardiac arrhythmias I50.- Heart failure I51.8 Other ill-defined heart diseases I60-I69 Cerebrovascular diseases, except I67.0-I67.5, I67.9, I69.-</p> <p>The following circulatory diseases will not be accepted as due to malignant neoplasms:</p> <p>I00-I09 Rheumatic fever and rheumatic heart disease I10-I15 Hypertensive disease (except when reported as due to endocrine neoplasms, renal neoplasms and carcinoid tumours) I20.- Angina pectoris I25.- Chronic ischaemic heart disease I70.- Atherosclerosis</p>				
<p>Page 88 Section 4.2.7</p> <p>Revise Text</p>	<p>4.2.7.3 Primary site ... C. More than one primary neoplasm ... (c) <i>Site-specific morphology reported with other sites</i> ... Example 29: I (a) Hodgkin lymphoma (b) Carcinoma of bladder</p> <p>Two different morphological types are mentioned, which indicates the presence of two different primary neoplasms, Hodgkin lymphoma and bladder carcinoma. One primary malignant neoplasm should not be accepted as due to another. Therefore, Rule 2 applies, and Hodgkin lymphoma, <u>unspecified</u> (C81.9) is selected as the underlying cause.</p>	MRG 1717	October 2010	Minor	January 2012 Corrections to URC #1230
Revise text	<p>4.2.7.9 Infectious diseases and malignant neoplasms</p> <p>(a) <i>Infections due to malignant neoplasm</i></p> <p>Owing to the effect of chemotherapy on the immune system, some cancer patients become prone to infectious diseases and die of them. Therefore, any infectious disease classified aside from those listed in A00-B19 or B25-B64 <u>section 4.2.2 A.(a)</u> reported as "due to" cancer will be an acceptable sequence.</p>	MRG 1770	October 2011	Major	January 2013
Insert a new section	<p>4.2.8 Involvement of multiple types of substance use <u>If a condition classifiable to F10-F19 or F55 is selected as underlying cause, and one or more other conditions also classified to F10-F19 or F55 are mentioned on the death certificate,</u></p>	MRG 1023	October 2006	Major	January 2010

<p>Renumber remaining sections.</p> <p>add note</p> <p>modify text</p>	<p><u>proceed as follows:</u></p> <p><u>i) If one condition is specified as the cause of death, code to that condition.</u></p> <p><u>ii) When no single condition is specified as the main cause of death, clarification should be sought from the certifier.</u></p> <p><u>iii) When no such clarification can be obtained, select the underlying cause in the following order of priority:</u></p> <p><u>1) Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of opioids (F11)</u></p> <p><u>2) Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of cocaine (F14)</u></p> <p><u>3) Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of other stimulants, including caffeine (F15)</u></p> <p><u>4) Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of synthetic narcotics, in F19</u></p> <p><u>5) Abuse of antidepressants and non-opioid analgesics, in F55</u></p> <p><u>6) Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of cannabinoids (F12), Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of sedatives and hypnotics (F13), Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of hallucinogens (F16), Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of tobacco (F17), Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of volatile solvents (F18), Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of substances other than synthetic narcotics classified to F19, Abuse of non-dependence-producing substances other than antidepressants and non-opioid analgesics classified to F55.</u></p> <p><u>7) Mental and behavioural disorders due to use of alcohol (F10)</u></p> <p><u>If the death certificate reports more than one mental and behavioural disorder in the same priority group, code to first mentioned.</u></p> <p><u>4.2.9 Rheumatic fever with heart involvement</u></p> <p><u>4.2.1112 Poisoning by drugs, medicaments and biological substances</u></p> <p>When combinations of medicinal agents classified differently are involved, proceed as follows:</p> <p>A) Selection of the underlying cause of death</p> <p>i) If one component of the combination is specified as the cause of death, code to that component.</p> <p>Ex.: I(a) Poisoning by amphetamine</p> <p>II Toxic levels of heroin and flunitrazepam</p> <p>Code to accidental poisoning by amphetamine (X41). By placing amphetamine poisoning alone in Part I and reporting the other substances as contributing causes of death in Part II, the certifier has identified amphetamine as the most important substance in bringing about the death.</p> <p>Ex.: I(a) Poisoning by alcohol</p> <p>II Toxic levels of heroin and flunitrazepam</p> <p>Code to accidental poisoning by alcohol (X45). By placing alcohol poisoning alone in Part I and reporting the other substances as contributing causes of death in Part II, the certifier has identified alcohol as the most important substance in bringing about the death.</p> <p>Ex.: I(a) Poisoning by heroin</p> <p>II Toxic levels of alcohol and flunitrazepam</p>				
--	--	--	--	--	--

	<p>Code to accidental poisoning by heroin (X42). By placing heroin poisoning alone in Part I and reporting the other substances as contributing causes of death, the certifier has identified heroin as the most important substance in bringing about the death.</p> <p>ii) When no component is specified as the main cause of death, clarification should be sought from the certifier.</p> <p>iii) When no such clarification can be obtained, code combinations of alcohol with a drug to the drug. For other multi-drug deaths, code to the appropriate category for "Other".</p> <p>iv) <u>When F10-F19 is reported on the same record with a poisoning, proceed as follows:</u> <u>F10-F19 Mental and behavioural disorders due to psychoactive substance use</u> <u>with mention of:</u> <u>X40-X49 Accidental poisoning by and exposure to noxious substances, code X40-X49</u> <u>X60-X69 Intentional self-poisoning by and exposure to noxious substances, code X60-X69</u> <u>X85-X90 Assault by noxious substances, code X85-X90</u> <u>Y10-Y19 Poisoning by and exposure to drugs, chemicals and noxious substances, code Y10-Y19</u> <u>Fourth character .0 (Acute intoxication), code X40-X49, X60-X69, X85-X90 or Y10-Y19</u> <u>Refer to section 4.1.11 when multiple conditions classified to F10-F19 are reported on the same record.</u></p> <p>B) Identifying the most dangerous drug</p> <p>To provide useful statistics on multiple drug deaths, it is of utmost importance that the most dangerous drug is identifiable in addition to the underlying cause (see also <i>Nature of injury</i>, pp 86-87). When selecting the code for the most dangerous drug, apply the following instructions.</p> <p>If one component of the combination is specified as the cause of death, code to that component. If no single component is indicated as the cause of death, code combinations of alcohol with a drug to the drug. When the classification provides a specific category for a combination of drugs, e.g. mixed antiepileptics (T42.5), code to that category. If no appropriate combination category is available, select the main injury code in the following order of priority:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Opioids (T40.0-T40.2) Combinations including opioids classifiable to more than one fourth-character subcategory in T40.0-T40.2: Code to T40.2 2. Cocaine (T40.5) 3. Psychostimulants with abuse potential (T43.6) Includes: Amphetamine and derivatives 4. Synthetic narcotics and other and unspecified narcotics (T40.3-T40.4, T40.6) Combinations including synthetic narcotics classifiable to more than one fourth-character subcategory in T40.3-T40.4: Code to T40.4 Combinations including synthetic narcotics classifiable to more than one fourth-character subcategory in T40.3-T40.4 with other and unspecified narcotics classifiable to T40.6: Code to T40.6 5. Antidepressants (T43.0-T43.2) 				
--	--	--	--	--	--

	<p>Combinations including antidepressants classifiable to more than one fourth-character subcategory in T43.0-T43.2: Code to T43.2</p> <p>6. Non-opioid analgesics (T39.-)</p> <p>Combinations including non-opioid analgesics classifiable to more than one fourth-character subcategory in T39.0-T39.4: Code to T39.8</p> <p>7. Drugs and substances not listed above</p> <p>If the death certificate reports more than one such drug, code to the first mentioned.</p> <p><u>If there is more than one drug in the same priority group, code to the first mentioned.</u></p>				
Page 86	<p>4.2.9 Congenital malformations, deformations and chromosomal abnormalities</p> <p>If the interval between onset...on the medical certificate.</p>	MRG 0118	October 2002	Major	January 2006
Add text	<p><u>On neonatal or infant death certificates, where lung or pulmonary hypoplasia is given with any mention of immaturity, prematurity, short gestation or low birth weight, code to pulmonary immaturity (P28.0) and not to Q33.6.</u></p>				
Page 87	<p>4.2.11 Poisoning by drugs, medicaments and biological substances</p>	MRG 0193	October 2003	Major	January 2006
Change existing text as indicated	<p>When combinations of medicinal agents classified differently are involved, proceed as follows: if one component of the combination is specified as the cause of death, code to that component; if no component is specified as the cause of death, code to the category provided for the combination, e.g. mixed antiepileptics (T42.5). Otherwise, if the components are classified to the same three character category, code to the appropriate subcategory for "Other"; if not, code to T50.9.</p>				
Add text	<p><u>A) Selection of the underlying cause of death</u></p> <p><u>i) If one component of the combination is specified as the cause of death, code to that component.</u></p> <p><u>Ex.: I(a) Poisoning by amphetamine</u> <u>II Toxic levels of heroin and flunitrazepam</u></p> <p><u>Code to accidental poisoning by amphetamine (X41). By placing amphetamine poisoning alone in Part I and reporting the other substances as contributing causes of death in Part II, the certifier has identified amphetamine as the most important substance in bringing about the death.</u></p> <p><u>Ex.: I(a) Poisoning by alcohol</u> <u>II Toxic levels of heroin and flunitrazepam</u></p> <p><u>Code to accidental poisoning by alcohol (X45). By placing alcohol</u></p>				

	<p><u>poisoning alone in Part I and reporting the other substances as contributing causes of death in Part II, the certifier has identified alcohol as the most important substance in bringing about the death.</u></p> <p>Ex.: I(a) <u>Poisoning by heroin</u> II <u>Toxic levels of alcohol and flunitrazepam</u> <u>Code to accidental poisoning by heroin (X42). By placing heroin poisoning alone in Part I and reporting the other substances as contributing causes of death, the certifier has identified heroin as the most important substance in bringing about the death.</u></p> <p>ii) <u>When no component is specified as the main cause of death, clarification should be sought from the certifier.</u> iii) <u>When no such clarification can be obtained, code combinations of alcohol with a drug to the drug. For other multi-drug deaths, code to the appropriate category for “Other”.</u></p> <p><u>B) Identifying the most dangerous drug</u></p> <p><u>To provide useful statistics on multiple drug deaths, it is of utmost importance that the most dangerous drug is identifiable in addition to the underlying cause (see also <i>Nature of injury</i>, pp 86-87). When selecting the code for the most dangerous drug, apply the following instructions.</u></p> <p><u>If one component of the combination is specified as the cause of death, code to that component. If no single component is indicated as the cause of death, code combinations of alcohol with a drug to the drug. When the classification provides a specific category for a combination of drugs, e.g. mixed antiepileptics (T42.5), code to that category. If no appropriate combination category is available, select the main injury code in the following order of priority:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <u>1. Opioids (T40.0-T40.2)</u> <u>Combinations including opioids classifiable to more than one fourth-character subcategory in T40.0-T40.2: Code to T40.2</u> <u>2. Cocaine (T40.5)</u> <u>3. Psychostimulants with abuse potential (T43.6)</u> <u>Includes: Amphetamine and derivatives</u> <u>4. Synthetic narcotics and other and unspecified narcotics (T40.3-T40.4, T40.6)</u> <u>Combinations including synthetic narcotics classifiable to more than one fourth-character subcategory in T40.3-T40.4: Code to T40.4</u> <u>Combinations including synthetic narcotics classifiable to more than one</u> 				
--	--	--	--	--	--

	<p><u>fourth-character subcategory in T40.3-T40.4 with other and unspecified narcotics classifiable to T40.6: Code to T40.6</u></p> <p><u>5. Antidepressants (T43.0-T43.2)</u> <u>Combinations including antidepressants classifiable to more than one fourth-character subcategory in T43.0-T43.2: Code to T43.2</u></p> <p><u>6. Non-opioid analgesics (T39.-)</u> <u>Combinations including non-opioid analgesics classifiable to more than one fourth-character subcategory in T39.0-T39.4: Code to T39.8</u></p> <p><u>7. Drugs and substances not listed above</u> <u>If the death certificate reports more than one such drug, code to the first mentioned.</u></p>				
<p>Page 104</p> <p>Add text</p>	<p>4.2.12 Poisoning by drugs, medicaments and biological substances</p> <p>When combinations of medicinal agents classified differently are involved, proceed as follows:</p> <p>A) Selection of the underlying cause of death</p> <p>i) If one component of the combination is specified as the <u>cause of death most important substance in bringing about the death</u>, code to that component.</p> <p><u>Example x: I(a) Accidental heroin overdose</u> <u>II Diazepam and amitriptyline present</u></p> <p><u>Code to accidental poisoning by heroin (X42). By placing heroin overdose alone in Part I and reporting the other substances as contributing causes of death in Part II, the certifier has identified heroin as the most important substance in bringing about the death.</u></p> <p>Example 5: I(a) Poisoning by amphetamine II Toxic levels of heroin and flunitrazepam</p> <p>Code to accidental poisoning by amphetamine (X41). By placing amphetamine poisoning alone in Part I and reporting the other substances as contributing causes of death in Part II, the certifier has identified amphetamine as the most important substance in bringing about the death.</p> <p>Example 6: I(a) Poisoning by alcohol II Toxic levels of heroin and flunitrazepam</p>	<p>MRG 1473</p>	<p>October 2010</p>	<p>Minor</p>	<p>January 2012</p>

Add text	<p>Code to accidental poisoning by alcohol (X45). By placing alcohol poisoning alone in Part I and reporting the other substances as contributing causes of death in Part II, the certifier has identified alcohol as the most important substance in bringing about the death.</p> <p>Example 7: I(a) Poisoning by heroin II Toxic levels of alcohol and flunitrazepam</p> <p>Code to accidental poisoning by heroin (X42). By placing heroin poisoning alone in Part I and reporting the other substances as contributing causes of death, the certifier has identified heroin as the most important substance in bringing about the death.</p> <p>ii) When no component is specified as the main cause of death <u>most important substance in bringing about the death</u>, clarification should be sought from the certifier.</p> <p>iii) When no such clarification can be obtained, code combinations of alcohol with a drug to the drug. For other multi-drug deaths, code to the appropriate category for “Other”.</p> <p>Example x: I(a) <u>Accidental overdose of heroin and amphetamine</u></p> <p><u>Code to accidental poisoning by and exposure to other and unspecified drugs, medicaments and biological substances (X44). Neither of the drugs reported in Part I is identified as the most important substance in bringing about the death and there is no specific code category for the combination of these substances.</u></p> <p>...</p> <p>B) Identifying the most dangerous drug <u>for main nature of injury coding</u></p> <p>To provide useful statistics on multiple drug deaths, it is of utmost importance that the <u>nature of injury code for the</u> most dangerous drug is identified in addition to the underlying cause code (see also Nature of injury, pp 86-87). When selecting the <u>main nature of injury</u> code for the most dangerous drug, apply the following instructions.</p> <p>If one component of the combination is specified as the cause of death, code <u>the main nature of injury</u> to that component. If no single component is indicated as the cause of death, code combinations of alcohol with a drug to the drug. When the classification provides a specific category for a combination of drugs, e.g. mixed antiepileptics (T42.5), code to that category. If no appropriate combination category is available, select the main <u>nature of injury</u> code in the following order of priority:</p> <p>1. Opioids (T40.0-T40.2) Combinations including opioids classifiable to more than one fourth-character subcategory</p>				
----------	---	--	--	--	--

	<p>in T40.0-T40.2: Code to T40.2</p> <p>2. Cocaine (T40.5)</p> <p>3. Psychostimulants with abuse potential (T43.6) Includes: Amphetamine and derivatives</p> <p>4. Synthetic narcotics and other and unspecified narcotics (T40.3-T40.4, T40.6) Combinations including synthetic narcotics classifiable to more than one fourth-character subcategory in T40.3-T40.4: Code to T40.4 Combinations including synthetic narcotics classifiable to more than one fourth-character subcategory in T40.3-T40.4 with other and unspecified narcotics classifiable to T40.6: Code to T40.6</p> <p>5. Antidepressants (T43.0-T43.2) Combinations including antidepressants classifiable to more than one fourth-character subcategory in T43.0-T43.2: Code to T43.2</p> <p>6. Non-opioid analgesics (T39.-) Combinations including non-opioid analgesics classifiable to more than one fourth-character subcategory in T39.0-T39.4: Code to T39.8</p> <p>7. Drugs and substances not listed above If the death certificate reports more than one such drug, code to the first mentioned.</p> <p><u>Example x: I(a) Heroin, cocaine, diazepam and amitriptyline overdose</u></p> <p><u>Underlying cause of death: Code to accidental poisoning by and exposure to other and unspecified drugs, medicaments and biological substances (X44). None of the drugs reported in Part I are identified as the most important substance in bringing about the death and there is no specific code category for the combination of these substances.</u></p> <p><u>Main nature of injury: Code to poisoning by heroin (T40.1). On the priority list above, heroin is in group 1, cocaine (T40.5) is in group 2, diazepam (T42.4) is in group 7 and amitriptyline (T43.0) is in group 5.</u></p> <p><u>Example x: I(a) Accidental poisoning by alcohol, heroin and diazepam</u></p> <p><u>Underlying cause of death: Code to accidental poisoning by and exposure to other and unspecified drugs, medicaments and biological substances (X44). Poisoning by combinations of alcohol and drug(s) are coded to the drug(s) (see instruction 4.2.11, A. iii). Neither of the drugs reported in Part I is identified as the most important substance in bringing about the death and there is no specific code category for the combination of these substances</u></p> <p><u>Main nature of injury: Code to poisoning by heroin (T40.1). On the priority list above, heroin (T40.1) is in priority group 1 and diazepam (T42.4) is in group 7.</u></p>				
Please note	4.2.11 Nature of injury	MRG	October 2011	Major	January 2013

<p>that rules were re-numbered previously</p>	<p><u>When death is caused by an injury or poisoning classified to Chapter XIX (S00-T98), code the external cause of the injury or poisoning (Chapter XX, V01-Y89) as underlying cause of death.</u></p> <p><u>In addition to the underlying cause from Chapter XX (V01-Y89), code also a main injury (S00-T98). If more than one injury is reported on the death certificate, apply the following instructions:</u></p> <p><u>a) When the injuries reported include superficial and trivial injury (as listed in Appendix 7.1 List of conditions unlikely to cause death), whether in Part I or Part II, select the main injury as if the superficial or trivial injury had not been reported.</u></p> <p><u>Ex.: I (a) Contusion of arm and fracture of skull</u> <u>(b) Fall from scaffolding</u></p> <p><u>Code to fall on and from scaffolding (W12) as underlying cause of death. As main injury, code fracture of skull and facial bones, part unspecified (S02.9). Superficial injury of upper limb, level unspecified (T11.0) is ignored.</u></p> <p><u>b) When serious (non-superficial and non-trivial) injuries are reported in both Part I and Part II, select the main injury from Part I. This applies even when the injuries mentioned in Part II have a higher rank on the <i>Priority Ranking of ICD-10 Nature of Injury Codes</i> list (see Appendix #) than the injuries mentioned in Part I.</u></p> <p><u>Ex.: I (a) Multiple intrathoracic injuries</u> <u>(b) Car driver, collision with bus</u> <u>II Brain injuries</u></p> <p><u>Code to car driver injured in collision with heavy transport vehicle or bus (V44.5) as underlying cause of death. As main injury, code multiple injuries of thorax (S29.7). Intracranial injury, unspecified (S06.9) has a higher rank on the priority list than multiple injuries of thorax, but multiple injuries of thorax are mentioned in Part I and take precedence of the injuries mentioned in Part II.</u></p> <p><u>When serious injuries are reported only in Part II, select a main injury from Part II.</u></p> <p><u>c) When more than one serious injury is reported in the relevant part of the certificate, select the main injury according to the <i>Priority Ranking of ICD-10 Nature-of-Injury Codes</i> list (see Appendix #). Note that 1 is the highest priority rank and that 6 is the lowest.</u></p> <p><u>Ex.: I (a) Multiple intrathoracic injuries and brain injuries</u></p>	<p>1219</p>			
---	--	-------------	--	--	--

	<p><u>(b) Car driver, collision with bus</u></p> <p><u>Code to car driver injured in collision with heavy transport vehicle or bus (V44.5) as underlying cause of death. As main injury, code intracranial injury, unspecified (S06.9), which has a higher rank on the priority list than multiple injuries of thorax (S29.7).</u></p> <p><u>d) When more than one of the serious injuries reported in the relevant part of the certificate have the same and highest rank, select the first mentioned of these injuries. However, prefer a specific injury over an injury from the block T00-T07 (Injuries involving multiple body regions) with the same priority rank.</u></p> <p><u>Ex.: I (a) Multiple injuries with rupture of aorta</u> <u>(b) Car driver, collision with bus</u></p> <p><u>Code to car driver injured in collision with heavy transport vehicle or bus (V44.5) as underlying cause of death. As main injury, code rupture of aorta. Multiple injuries (T07) and rupture of aorta (S25.0) have the same rank on the priority list, but a specific injury takes precedence over an injury coded in T00-T07.</u></p> <p><u>The priority list would be placed in an appendix. The list is as follows:</u></p> <p><u>Priority Ranking of ICD-10 Nature-of-Injury Codes</u></p> <table><tr><td><u>Code</u></td><td><u>Rank</u></td></tr><tr><td colspan="2"><u>1= Highest priority rank</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>S00-S02.0</u></td><td><u>6</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>S02.1</u></td><td><u>4</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>S02.2-.8</u></td><td><u>6</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>S02.9</u></td><td><u>3</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>S03.0</u></td><td><u>5</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>S03.1-.2</u></td><td><u>6</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>S03.3</u></td><td><u>5</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>S03.4-S05.6</u></td><td><u>6</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>S05.7</u></td><td><u>5</u></td></tr><tr><td><u>S05.8-.S06.0</u></td><td><u>6</u></td></tr></table>	<u>Code</u>	<u>Rank</u>	<u>1= Highest priority rank</u>		<u>S00-S02.0</u>	<u>6</u>	<u>S02.1</u>	<u>4</u>	<u>S02.2-.8</u>	<u>6</u>	<u>S02.9</u>	<u>3</u>	<u>S03.0</u>	<u>5</u>	<u>S03.1-.2</u>	<u>6</u>	<u>S03.3</u>	<u>5</u>	<u>S03.4-S05.6</u>	<u>6</u>	<u>S05.7</u>	<u>5</u>	<u>S05.8-.S06.0</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>Code</u>	<u>Rank</u>																												
<u>1= Highest priority rank</u>																													
<u>S00-S02.0</u>	<u>6</u>																												
<u>S02.1</u>	<u>4</u>																												
<u>S02.2-.8</u>	<u>6</u>																												
<u>S02.9</u>	<u>3</u>																												
<u>S03.0</u>	<u>5</u>																												
<u>S03.1-.2</u>	<u>6</u>																												
<u>S03.3</u>	<u>5</u>																												
<u>S03.4-S05.6</u>	<u>6</u>																												
<u>S05.7</u>	<u>5</u>																												
<u>S05.8-.S06.0</u>	<u>6</u>																												

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

<u>S06.1-.9</u>	<u>2</u>				
<u>S07.0</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S07.1</u>	<u>1</u>				
<u>S07.8-.9</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S08.0-.1</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S08.8</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S08.9</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S09.0</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S09.1-.8</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S09.9</u>	<u>4</u>				
<u>S10.0-.2</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S11.7</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S11.8</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S11.9</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S12.0-.7</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S12.8</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S12.9</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S13.0</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S13.1-.2</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S13.3</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S13.4</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S13.6</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S14.0</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S14.1</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S14.2-.5</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S14.6</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S15</u>	<u>1</u>				
<u>S16</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S17.0</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S17.8</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S17.9</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S18</u>	<u>1</u>				
<u>S19.7</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S19.8</u>	<u>4</u>				
<u>S19.9-S21</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S22.0-.1</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S22.2-.3</u>	<u>6</u>				

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

<u>S22.4</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S22.5</u>	<u>2</u>				
<u>S22.8-.9</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S23.0</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S23.1-.2</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S23.3-.5</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S24</u>	<u>4</u>				
<u>S25.0</u>	<u>1</u>				
<u>S25.1</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S25.2-.4</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S25.5</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S25.7</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S25.8</u>	<u>2</u>				
<u>S25.9</u>	<u>4</u>				
<u>S26.0</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S26.8-S27.6</u>	<u>2</u>				
<u>S27.7</u>	<u>1</u>				
<u>S27.8-.9</u>	<u>2</u>				
<u>S28.0-.1</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S29.0</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S29.7</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S29.8</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S29.9</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S30-S31.1</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S31.2-.3</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S31.4-S32.3</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S32.4</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S32.5</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S32.7-.8</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S33.0-.2</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S33.3</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S33.4-.6</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S33.7</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S34.0-.6</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S34.8</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S35.0-.1</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S35.2-.5</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S35.7</u>	<u>3</u>				

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

<u>S35.8-.9</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S36</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S37</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S38.0</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S38.1</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S38.2-S39.0</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S39.6</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S39.7</u>	<u>4</u>				
<u>S39.8</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S39.9</u>	<u>4</u>				
<u>S40-S41.7</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S41.8</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S42.0-.2</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S42.3</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S42.4</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S42.7</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S42.9</u>	<u>4</u>				
<u>S43-S44.9</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S45</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S46</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S47</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S48</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S49.7</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S49.8-S51.9</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S52</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S53-S55.0</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S55.1-.2</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S55.7</u>	<u>4</u>				
<u>S55.8-.9</u>	<u>1</u>				
<u>S56-S58</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S59.7</u>	<u>4</u>				
<u>S59.8</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S59.9</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S60-S62.7</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S62.8</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S63-S65.0</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S65.1</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S65.2-.8</u>	<u>6</u>				

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

<u>S65.9</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S66-S68.3</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S68.4</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S68.8</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S68.9</u>	<u>1</u>				
<u>S69</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S70-S71</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S72.0-.2</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S72.3-.4</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S72.7</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S72.8</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S72.9</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S73-S74.1</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S74.2-.7</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S74.8-.9</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S75.0-.1</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S75.2</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S75.7</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S75.8</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S75.9</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S76</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S77.0</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S77.1-S78.1</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S78.9-S79.9</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S80-S81</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S82</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S83-S85.2</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S85.3</u>	<u>4</u>				
<u>S85.4-.5</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S85.7</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S85.8</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S85.9</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S86.0-.7</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S86.8</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S86.9-S87.0</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S87.8</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S88.0-.1</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S88.9</u>	<u>4</u>				

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

<u>S89.7-.9</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S90-S95.0</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S95.1</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>S95.2-S97.0</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S97.1</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>S97.8-S98.4</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>S99.7-.9</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T00-T01.0</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T01.1</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T01.2-T01.6</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T01.8</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T01.9</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T02</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>T03.0-.8</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T03.9</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T04.0</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T04.1-.3</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T04.4</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T04.7</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T04.8</u>	<u>4</u>				
<u>T04.9</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T05.0-.4</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T05.5</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>T05.6-.9</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T06.0</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T06.1-.2</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T06.3</u>	<u>2</u>				
<u>T06.4</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T06.5</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>T06.8</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T07</u>	<u>1</u>				
<u>T08</u>	<u>4</u>				
<u>T09.0</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T09.1</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T09.2</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T09.3</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>T09.4</u>	<u>2</u>				
<u>T09.5</u>	<u>6</u>				

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

<u>T09.6</u>	<u>1</u>				
<u>T09.8-T11.1</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T11.2</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T11.3</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T11.4</u>	<u>2</u>				
<u>T11.5</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T11.6</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>T11.8-.9</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T12</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>T13.0-.3</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T13.4</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>T13.5-.6</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T13.8</u>	<u>4</u>				
<u>T13.9</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T14.0</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T14.1</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T14.2</u>	<u>2</u>				
<u>T14.3-.4</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T14.5</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T14.6</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>T14.7</u>	<u>2</u>				
<u>T14.8-T15.8</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T15.9</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T16</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T17.0-.1</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T17.2-.4</u>	<u>2</u>				
<u>T17.5</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T17.8-.9</u>	<u>2</u>				
<u>T18.0-.2</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T18.3-.4</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T18.5-T19.1</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T19.2</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T19.3-.8</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T19.9</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T20.0-.2</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T20.3</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T20.4-.6</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T20.7</u>	<u>5</u>				

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

<u>T21.0-.2</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T21.3</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T21.4-.6</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T21.7</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T22.0-.2</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T22.3</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T22.4-.6</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T22.7</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T23.0-.2</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T23.3</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T23.4-.6</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T23.7</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T24.0-.2</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T24.3</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T24.4-.6</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T24.7</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T25.0-.2</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T25.3</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T25.4-.6</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T25.7</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T26.0-.2</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T26.3</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T26.4-.6</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T26.7-T27.0</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T27.1</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>T27.2-T28.3</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T28.4-.6</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T28.7</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T28.8-.9</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T29.0</u>	<u>4</u>				
<u>T29.1-.2</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T29.3</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T29.4-.6</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T29.7</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T30.0</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>T30.1-.2</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T30.3-.4</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>T30.5-.6</u>	<u>6</u>				

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

<u>T30.7</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>T31.0-.2</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T31.3-.4</u>	<u>4</u>				
<u>T31.5-.6</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>T31.7-.9</u>	<u>2</u>				
<u>T32.0-.2</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T32.3-.4</u>	<u>4</u>				
<u>T32.5-.6</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>T32.7-.9</u>	<u>2</u>				
<u>T33</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T34.0-.4</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T34.5</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T34.6-.9</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T35.0-.1</u>	<u>4</u>				
<u>T35.2-.5</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T35.6</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>T35.7</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T66</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T67.0</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>T67.1-.3</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T67.4</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>T67.5-.6</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T67.8</u>	<u>1</u>				
<u>T67.9</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T68</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>T69.0</u>	<u>1</u>				
<u>T69.8</u>	<u>4</u>				
<u>T69.9</u>	<u>2</u>				
<u>T70.0</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T70.1</u>	<u>4</u>				
<u>T70.2</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>T70.3</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T70.4-.8</u>	<u>6</u>				
<u>T70.9</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T71</u>	<u>1</u>				
<u>T73.0</u>	<u>3</u>				
<u>T73.1</u>	<u>5</u>				
<u>T73.2</u>	<u>6</u>				

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

	<u>T73.3</u> 5 <u>T73.8-T74</u> 6 <u>T75.0</u> 4 <u>T75.1</u> 2 <u>T75.2-.3</u> 6 <u>T75.4</u> 3 <u>T75.8</u> 6 <u>T90.0-.4</u> 6 <u>T90.5</u> 3 <u>T90.8</u> 6 <u>T90.9</u> 3 <u>T91.0-.1</u> 6 <u>T91.2-.3</u> 4 <u>T91.4</u> 3 <u>T91.5-.8</u> 6 <u>T91.9</u> 1 <u>T92.0-.2</u> 5 <u>T92.3-.8</u> 6 <u>T92.9</u> 3 <u>T93.0</u> 6 <u>T93.1</u> 5 <u>T93.2-.3</u> 6 <u>T93.4</u> 5 <u>T93.5-.9</u> 6 <u>T94.0-.1</u> 3 <u>T95.0</u> 6 <u>T95.1</u> 5 <u>T95.2-.3</u> 6 <u>T95.8-.9</u> 3 <u>T98.0-.1</u> 1 <u>T98.2</u> 6				
	4.2.12 External causes The codes for external causes (V01-Y89) should be used as the primary codes for single-condition coding and tabulation of the underlying cause when, and only when, the morbid condition is classifiable to Chapter XIX (Injury, poisoning and certain other consequences of external causes).	MRG (URC:1063)	October 2006	Minor	January 2008

<p>Add text p. 118</p>	<p>When the morbid condition is classified to Chapters I-XVIII, the morbid condition itself should be coded as the underlying cause and categories from the chapter for external causes may be used, if desired, as supplementary codes. <u>When a sequence of external events is reported, apply the General Principle and the selection rules in the normal way, and select the first external event that affected the decedent.</u> <u>Example: I (a) Hypothermia</u> <u>(b) Exposure to cold</u> <u>(c) Driver of car, left road, rolled down embankment, trapped in car 3 days before discovery</u> <u>Code to driver of car injured in noncollision transport accident (V48.5)</u></p>				
<p>Add text</p>	<p>Section 4.2.14 <u>When the certifier uses “either ... or...”, or a synonymous expression to indicate that death was due to <i>either</i> one cause of death <i>or</i> another, apply the following instructions.</u> <u>1. One condition, <i>either</i> one site <i>or</i> another</u> <u>a. Code to the residual category for the group or anatomical system in which the reported sites are classified.</u> <u>Ex.: I (a) Cancer of kidney or bladder</u> <u>Code to malignant neoplasm, urinary organ, unspecified (C68.9).</u> <u>b. If the reported sites are in different anatomical systems or if there is no residual category for the group or anatomical system, code to the residual category for the disease or condition specified.</u> <u>Ex.: I (a) Cancer of adrenal or kidney</u> <u>Code to primary malignant neoplasm, primary site unspecified (C80.9), since adrenal</u> <u>and kidney are in different anatomical systems.</u> <u>2. One site or system, <i>either</i> one condition <i>or</i> another</u> <u>a. If the reported conditions are classifiable to different four character subcategories of the same three character category, code to the four-character subcategory for “unspecified”.</u> <u>Ex.: I (a) Arteriosclerotic heart disease or coronary aneurysm</u></p>	<p>MRG URC 1859</p>	<p>October 2011</p>	<p>Major</p>	<p>January 2013</p>

	<p><u>Code to chronic ischemic heart disease, unspecified (I25.9).</u></p> <p><u>b. If the reported conditions are classifiable to different three character categories but ICD-10 provides a residual category for the disease in general, code to the residual category.</u></p> <p><u>Ex.: I (a) MI or coronary aneurysm</u></p> <p><u>Code to the residual category for ischemic heart disease (I25.9).</u></p> <p><u>c. If the reported conditions are classifiable to different three character categories and there is no residual category for the disease in general, code to the residual category relating to the disease of the anatomical site/system.</u></p> <p><u>Ex.: I (a) Tuberculosis or cancer of lung</u></p> <p><u>Code to other disorders of lung (J98.4). Both conditions involve the lung.</u></p> <p><u>Ex.: I (a) Stroke or heart attack</u></p> <p><u>Code to other and unspecified disorders of circulatory system (I99). Both conditions are in the circulatory system.</u></p> <p><u>3. Either one condition or another, either one site or another</u></p> <p><u>When different diseases of different anatomical systems are reported as “either ... or”, code to other specified general symptoms and signs (R68.8).</u></p> <p><u>Ex.: I (a) Gallbladder colic or coronary thrombosis</u></p> <p><u>Code to other specified general symptoms and signs (R68.8).</u></p> <p><u>4. Either disease or injury</u></p> <p><u>When death is reported as due to either a disease or an injury, code to other ill-defined and unspecified causes of mortality (R99).</u></p> <p><u>Ex.: I (a) Coronary occlusion or war injuries</u></p> <p><u>Code to other ill-defined and unspecified causes of mortality (R99).</u></p>				
Page 88	4.2.14 Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV)	Mortality Reference	October 2001	Major	January 2003

Add text	<p><u>When a blood transfusion is given as treatment for any condition (e.g. a haematological disorder) and an infected blood supply results in a HIV infection, code the HIV as the underlying cause and not the treated condition.</u></p> <p><u>Example 1:</u> I (a) Kaposi's sarcoma 1 year (b) HIV 3 years (c) Blood transfusion 5 years (d) Haemophilia since birth</p> <p><u>Code to HIV.</u></p> <p><u>Example 2:</u> I (a) <i>Pneumocystis carinii</i> 6 months (b) HIV 5 years (c) Ruptured spleen 7 years (d) Assault – fist fight 7 years</p> <p><u>Code to HIV.</u></p>	Group 0108			
Revise text	<p>4.2.14 Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV) When a blood transfusion is given as treatment for any condition (e.g. a haematological disorder) and an infected blood supply results in a HIV infection, code the HIV as the underlying cause and not the treated condition.</p> <p>Example 1: I (a) Kaposi's sarcoma 1 year (b) HIV 3 years (c) Blood transfusion 5 years (d) Haemophilia since birth</p> <p>Code to HIV.</p> <p>Example 2: I (a) <i>Pneumocystis carinii</i>[jirovecii] 6 months (b) HIV 5 years (c) Ruptured spleen 7 years (d) Assault – fist fight 7 years</p> <p>Code to HIV.</p>	Germany 1014	October 2006	Minor	January 2008
Revise code p. 92	(k) influenza (J09 J10 -J11) reported as “due to” any other disease	URC (Proposed and ratified at meeting in Tokyo Oct'05)	October 2005	Major	October 2005

p. 94	<p>4.2 Notes for interpretation of entries of causes of death</p> <p>4.2.1 Assumption of intervening cause</p> <p>4.2.2 Interpretation of “highly improbable”</p> <p>4.2.3 Effect of duration on classification</p> <p>.</p> <p>.</p> <p>4.2.15 <u>Death due to maternal (obstetric) causes</u></p> <p>a) <u>It is often difficult to identify a maternal death, particularly in cases of indirect obstetric causes. If there is any doubt that the cause of death is obstetrical, for example if the conditions entered in Part I are not obstetrical but there is a mention of pregnancy or delivery in Part II, additional information should be sought from the certifier. This is particularly important in countries where maternal mortality rate is high. If no additional information can be found, deaths with a mention of pregnancy and delivery in Part I should be considered obstetrical, but not deaths where pregnancy or delivery is mentioned in Part II only.</u></p> <p>b) <u>Note that when calculating maternal mortality rates, certain cases not coded to Chapter XV (O codes) should be included, provided that they meet the specifications outlined in section 4.2.15 a) for indirect obstetric causes. These cases are listed in the “Exclusion Note” at the beginning of Chapter XV.</u></p> <p>c) <u>There are cases of death due to obstetric causes that are not included in the calculation of the maternal death rate. These are those cases in which death occurs more than 42 days after delivery (see definition of “Maternal death” on page 134, Volume 2, ICD-10).</u></p>	MRG 1244	October 2007	Minor	January 2009
Revise code	<p>4.3.5 Coding rules</p> <p>Rule P3. No entry in sections (a) or (c).</p> <p>.....</p> <p><i>Example 6:</i> Liveborn; death at 2 days Coding</p> <p>(a) P95 P96.9</p> <p>(b)</p> <p>(c)</p> <p>(d) Eclampsia (longstanding essential hypertension)</p> <p>Unspecified perinatal cause is coded at (a); eclampsia is coded at (c).</p>	Korea 1915	October 2012	Minor	January 2014
	<p>4.4 Morbidity</p> <p>4.4.1 Guidelines for recording diagnostic information for single condition analysis of morbidity data</p> <p>.....</p> <p>Specificity and detail</p> <p>.....</p>	Japan 1873	October 2012	Minor	January 2014

Revise text	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Diabetic cataract, insulin-dependent type 1 <p>4.4.2 Guidelines for coding “main condition” and “other conditions”</p> <p><i>Optional additional codes</i> <i>Coding of combination categories</i></p> <p><i>Example 11</i> Main condition: Cataract. Insulin-dependent Type 1 diabetes mellitus Other conditions: Hypertension Specialty: Ophthalmology</p> <p>Code to insulin-dependent type 1 diabetes mellitus with ophthalmic complications (E10.3†) and diabetic cataract (H28.0*) as the “main condition”.</p> <p><i>Example 12</i> Main condition: Non-insulin-dependent Type 2 diabetes mellitus Other conditions: Hypertension Rheumatoid arthritis Cataract Specialty: General medicine</p> <p>Code to non-insulin-dependent type 2 diabetes mellitus without complications (E11.9) as “main condition”. Note that in this example the linkage of cataract with diabetes must not be made since they are not both recorded under “main condition”.</p> <p>4.4.3 Rules for reselection when the main condition is incorrectly recorded</p> <p><i>Rules for reselection of main condition</i></p> <p>Rule MB3. Condition recorded as “main condition” Is presenting symptom of diagnosed, treated condition</p> <p><i>Example 12</i> Main condition: Coma Other conditions: Ischaemic heart disease Otosclerosis Type 1 Ddiabetes mellitus, insulin-dependent</p>				
-------------	--	--	--	--	--

	<p>Specialty: Endocrinology Care: Establishment of correct dose of insulin</p> <p>Reselect type 1 diabetes mellitus, insulin-dependent as the “main condition” and code to E10.0. The information provided indicates that the coma was due to diabetes mellitus and coma is taken into account as it modifies the coding.</p> <p>4.4.4 Chapter-specific notes <i>Chapter IV: Endocrine, nutritional and metabolic diseases</i></p> <p><i>E10-E14 Diabetes mellitus</i></p> <p><i>Example 13</i> Main condition: Type 1 insulin-dependent diabetic with nephropathy, gangrene and cataracts Other conditions: —</p> <p>Code to type 1 insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus with multiple complications (E10.7). Codes E10.2† and N08.3* (Type 1 insulin-dependent diabetes with nephropathy), E10.5 (Type 1 insulin-dependent diabetes with peripheral circulatory complications) and E10.3† and H28.0* (Type 1 insulin-dependent diabetes with cataract) may be added as optional additional codes to identify the individual complications</p>				
<p>Page 119</p> <p>Add heading</p>	<p>4.4 Morbidity</p> <p>4.4.4 Chapter-specific notes <i>Chapter VIII: Diseases of the ear and mastoid process</i></p> <p><u>H90-H91 Hearing loss</u></p> <p>These codes are not to be used...</p>	WHO	October 1997		January 1999
<p>Revise category title page 126</p>	<p>4.4 Morbidity</p> <p>4.4.4 Chapter-specific notes <i>Chapter VII: Diseases of the eye and adnexa</i></p> <p><u>H54.- Blindness and low vision Visual impairment including blindness (binocular or monocular)</u> This code is not to be used as the preferred code for the "main condition" if the cause is recorded, unless the episode of care was mainly for the blindness itself. When coding to the cause, H54.- may be used as an optional additional code.</p>	WHO 1018		Major	January 2008

Add text	<p>4.4.4 Chapter-specific notes <i>Chapter II: Neoplasms</i> <u>C79.9 Secondary malignant neoplasm, unspecified site</u> <u>C79.9 should be used for “main condition” coding only when the malignancy is described as 'disseminated carcinomatosis' or 'generalised malignancy' (or other similar terms as described in the inclusion list for C79.9) and the specific sites are not documented.</u></p>	1603 Canada	October 2009	Minor	January 2011
Add codes and text	<p>4.4.4 <i>C80 Malignant neoplasm without specification of site</i> <u>C80.0 Malignant neoplasm, primary site unknown, so stated</u> <u>C80.9 Malignant neoplasm, primary site unspecified</u> <u>C80.- should be used for “main condition” coding only when the health care practitioner has clearly recorded the neoplasm as an unknown primary site or as an unspecified malignancy, assumed primary.</u></p>	1603 Canada	October 2009	Minor	January 2011
Delete text	<p>4.4.4 <i>C97 Malignant neoplasm of independent (primary) multiple sites</i> C80 should be used for “main condition” coding only when the health care practitioner has clearly recorded the neoplasm in such a manner. C97 should be used when ...</p> <p>Revise text: <i>Example 9</i> Main condition: Carcinomatosis Other conditions: —</p> <p>Code to <u>secondary malignant neoplasm, unspecified site (C79.9).</u>malignant neoplasm without specification of site (C80). <u>C80.9 (Malignant neoplasm, primary site unspecified) may be used as an additional code if the primary site is unspecified.). An appropriate code from Chapter XXI for personal history of neoplasm should be used for a primary neoplasm that is no longer present.</u></p>	Canada 1603	October 2009	Minor	January 2011
Paste these recommendations into Volume 2 after page 138 and before page 139.	<p>Recommendations</p> <p>1. Responsibility for medical certification of cause of death (see section 5.2)</p> <p>The medical certification of the cause of death is normally the responsibility of the attending physician. In the case of deaths certified by coroners or other legal authorities, the medical evidence supplied to the certifier should be stated on the certificate in addition to any legal findings.</p>	MRG 0113	October 2002	Major	January 2006

	<p>2. Form of medical certificate of cause of death (see sections 5.2, 4.1.3, and 4.3.1)</p> <p>The medical certificate of cause of death should be in line with the international recommendation (see section 4.1.3). Collection of perinatal mortality statistics should be consistent with the recommendations presented in section 4.3.1.</p> <p>3. Confidentiality of medical information (see section 5.2)</p> <p>Administrative procedures should ensure the confidentiality of data from the death certificate or other medical records.</p> <p>4. Selection of the cause for mortality tabulation (see section 4.1.1)</p> <p>The causes of death to be entered on the medical certificate of cause of death are all diseases, morbid conditions or injuries resulting in or contributing to death and the circumstances of the accident or violence resulting in injuries. When only one cause of death is recorded, this cause is selected for tabulation. When more than one cause of death is recorded, selection should be made in accordance with the rules and guidelines given in the ICD.</p> <p>5. Use of the International Classification of Diseases (see sections 2.1, 2.2, and 3.3)</p> <p>The purpose of the ICD is to permit the systematic recording, analysis, interpretation and comparison of mortality and morbidity data collected in different countries or areas and at different times. The “core” classification of ICD-10 is the three-character code, which is the mandatory level of coding for international reporting to the WHO mortality database and for general international comparisons. The four-character subcategories, while not mandatory for reporting at the international level, are recommended for many purposes and form an integral part of the ICD, as do the special tabulation lists.</p> <p>Mortality and morbidity statistics should be coded according to the tabular list of inclusions and the alphabetical index. Fourth-character subcategories, when published, should be those of the ICD. Any additions or variations should be indicated in published statistical tables.</p> <p>6. Perinatal mortality statistics (see sections 5.7.2 and 5.7.3)</p> <p>It is recommended that all fetuses and infants weighing at least 500 g at birth, whether alive or dead, should be included in <i>national</i> statistics. When information on birth weight is unavailable, the corresponding criteria for gestational age (22 completed weeks) or body length (25 cm crown-heel) should be used. The criteria for deciding whether an event has taken place within the perinatal period should be applied in the</p>				
--	--	--	--	--	--

	<p>order: (1) birth weight, (2) gestational age, (3) crown-heel length. The inclusion of fetuses and infants weighing between 500 g and 1000 g in national statistics is recommended both because of its inherent value and because it improves the coverage of reporting at 1000 g and over.</p> <p>In statistics for international comparison, inclusion of the extremely low-birth-weight group disrupts the validity of comparisons and is not recommended. Countries should also present statistics in which both the numerator and the denominator of all ratios and rates are restricted to fetuses and infants weighing 1000 g or more (weight-specific ratios and rates); where information on birth weight is not available, the corresponding gestational age (28 completed weeks) or body length (35 cm crown-heel) should be used.</p> <p>7. Maternal mortality statistics (see sections 5.8.2 and 5.8.3)</p> <p>Published maternal mortality rates should always specify the numerator, which can be given as: the number of recorded direct obstetric deaths, or the number of recorded obstetric deaths (direct plus indirect). For the purpose of international reporting of maternal mortality, only those maternal deaths occurring before the end of the 42-day reference period should be included in the calculation of the various ratios and rates, although the recording of later deaths is useful for national analytical purposes.</p> <p>8. Statistical tables (see sections 5.6.1 and 5.7.4)</p> <p>The degree of detail in cross-classification by cause, sex, age, and geographical area will depend both on the purpose and range of the statistics and on the practical limits to their tabulation. Standard ways of presenting statistics are described in sections 5.6.1 and 5.7.4 to promote international compatibility.</p> <p>9. Tabulation of causes of death (see sections 5.6.2 and 5.6.4)</p> <p>Statistics of causes of death for a defined area should be in accordance with recommendations in section 5.6.1. Deaths should preferably be classified by sex and age group as in recommendations in section 5.6.1. For statistics of perinatal mortality, full-scale multiple-cause analysis of all conditions reported will be of greatest benefit. Where such analysis is impracticable, analysis of the main disease or condition in the fetus or infant and of the main maternal condition affecting the fetus or infant with cross-tabulation of groups of these two conditions should be regarded as the minimum. Where it is necessary to select only one condition, the main disease or condition in the fetus or infant should be selected.</p>				
--	--	--	--	--	--

Page 141 Revise text:	5.8.1 – Definitions Maternal death ... Late maternal death ... Pregnancy-related death <u>Death occurring during pregnancy, childbirth and puerperium</u> A pregnancy-related death occurring during pregnancy, childbirth and puerperium is the death of a woman while pregnant or within 42 days of termination of pregnancy, irrespective of the cause of death (<u>obstetric and non obstetric</u>).	MRG 1242	October 2007	Minor	January 2009
Page 141 Replace term p. 143	5.8.1 – Definitions Pregnancy-related death <u>Death occurring during pregnancy, childbirth and puerperium</u> A pregnancy-related death occurring during pregnancy, childbirth and puerperium is the death of a woman while pregnant or within 42 days of termination of pregnancy, irrespective of the cause of death (<u>obstetric and non obstetric</u>). 5.8.4 Denominators for maternal mortality Pregnancy-related mortality-Ratio <u>Ratio for death occurring during pregnancy, childbirth and puerperium</u> Pregnancy-related dDeaths <u>occurring during pregnancy, childbirth and puerperium</u> x k ----- Live birth	MRG 1242	October 2007	Minor	January 2009
Page 142 Revise text:	5.8.3 Published maternal mortality rates It should be noted that maternal deaths from HIV disease (B20-B24) and obstetrical tetanus (A34) are coded to Chapter I. Care must be taken to include such cases in the maternal mortality rate. <u>Note that when calculating maternal mortality rates, cases not coded to Chapter XV (O codes) should be included. These include those categories presented in the “Exclusion Note” at the beginning of Chapter XV, provided that they meet the specifications outlined in section 4.2.15 a) for indirect obstetric causes.</u>	MRG 1244	October 2007	Minor	January 2009

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Page 142	5.8.3 Published maternal mortality rates	Canada 1187	January 2008	Major	January 2010
Revise text: It should be noted that maternal deaths from HIV disease (B20-B24) and obstetrical tetanus (A34) are coded to Chapter 1. Care must be taken to include such cases in the maternal mortality rate.				

The following list is to be included as an Appendix to Volume 2.

Reference: Decision date - October 2001. Mortality Reference Group (URC: 0109). Minor change for implementation in January 2003.

Contents

7.	Appendices	Page xxx
-----------	-------------------	-----------------

7.1	List of conditions unlikely to cause death	Page xxx
------------	---	-----------------

Appendix 7.1

List of conditions unlikely to cause death

Code	Category or subcategory
A31.1	Cutaneous mycobacterial infection
A42.8	Other forms of cutaneous actinomycosis
A60.0	Herpesviral infection of genitalia and urogenital tract
A71.0 – A71.9	Trachoma
A74.0	Chlamydial conjunctivitis
B00.2	Herpesviral gingivostomatitis
B00.5	Herpesviral ocular disease
B00.8	Herpesviral whitlow
B07	Viral warts
B08.1	Molluscum contagiosum
B08.8	Foot and mouth disease
B30.0 – B30.9	Viral conjunctivitis
B35.0 – B35.9	Dermatophytosis
B36.0 – B36.9	Other superficial mycoses
B85.0 – B85.4	Pediculosis and phthiriasis
F45.3 – F45.9	Somatoform disorders
F50.1, F50.3 – F50.9	Eating disorders
F51.0 – F51.9	Nonorganic sleep disorders
F52.0 – F52.9	Sexual dysfunction, not caused by organic disorder or disease
F60.0 – F60.9	Specific personality disorders
F61	Mixed and other personality disorders
F62.0 – F62.9	Enduring personality changes, not attributable to brain damage and disease
F63.0 – F63.9	Habit and impulse disorders
F64.0 – F64.9	Gender identity disorders
F65.0 – F65.9	Disorders of sexual preference

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

F66.0 – F66.9	Psychological and behavior disorders associated with sexual development and orientation
F68.0 – F68.9	Other disorders of adult personality and behavior
F69	Unspecified disorder of adult personality and behavior
F95.0 – F95.9	Tic disorders
F98.0 – F98.9	Other behavioural and emotional disorders with an onset usually occurring in childhood and adolescence
G43.0 – G43.2, G43.8 – G43.9	Migraine, except complicated migraine (G43.3)
G44.0 – G44.2	Other headache syndromes
G45.0 – G45.9	Transient cerebral ischaemic attacks and related syndromes
G50.0 – G50.9	Disorders of trigeminal nerve
G51.0 – G51.9	Facial nerve disorders
G54.0 – G54.9	Nerve root and plexus disorders
G56.0 – G56.9	Mononeuropathies of upper limb
G57.0 – G57.9	Mononeuropathies of lower limb
G58.7	Mononeuritis multiplex
H00.0 – H00.1	Hordeolum and chalazion
H01.0 – H01.9	Other inflammation of eyelid
H02.0 – H02.9	Other disorders of eyelid
H04.0 – H04.9	Disorders of lacrimal system
H10.0 – H10.9	Conjunctivitis
H11.0 – H11.9	Other disorders of conjunctiva
H15.0 – H15.9	Disorders of sclera
H16.0 – H16.9	Keratitis
H17.0 – H17.9	Corneal scars and opacities
H18.0 – H18.9	Other disorders of cornea
H20.0 – H20.9	Iridocyclitis
H21.0 – H21.9	Other disorders of iris and ciliary body
H25.0 – H25.9	Senile cataract
H26.0 – H26.9	Other cataract
H27.0 – H27.9	Other disorders of lens
H30.0 – H30.9	Chorioretinal inflammation
H31.0 – H31.9	Other disorders of choroid
H33.0 – H33.5	Retinal detachments and breaks
H34.0 – H34.9	Retinal vascular occlusions
H35.0 – H35.9	Other retinal disorders
H40.0 – H40.9	Glaucoma
H43.0 – H43.9	Disorders of vitreous body
H46	Optic neuritis
H47.0 – H47.7	Other disorders of optic (2 nd) nerve and visual pathways
H49.0 – H49.9	Paralytic strabismus
H50.0 – H50.9	Other strabismus
H51.0 – H51.9	Other disorders of binocular movement
H52.0 – H52.7	Disorders of refraction and accommodation

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

H53.0 – H53.9	Visual disturbances
H54.0 – H54.9	Blindness and low vision
H55	Nystagmus and other irregular eye movements
H57.0 – H57.9	Other disorders of eye and adnexa
H59.0 – H59.9	Postprocedural disorders of eye and adnexa, not elsewhere classified
H60.0 – H60.9	Otitis externa
H61.0 – H61.9	Other disorders of external ear
H80.0 – H80.9	Otosclerosis
H83.3 – H83.9	Other diseases of inner ear
H90.0 – H90.8	Conductive and sensorineural hearing loss
H91.0 – H91.9	Other hearing loss
H92.0 – H92.2	Otalgia and effusion of ear
H93.0 – H93.9	Other disorders of ear, not elsewhere classified
J00	Acute nasopharyngitis (common cold)
J06.0 – J06.9	Acute upper respiratory infections of multiple and unspecified sites
J30.0 – J30.4	Vasomotor and allergic rhinitis
J33.0 – J33.9	Nasal polyp
J34.2	Deviated nasal septum
J35.0 – J35.9	Chronic disease of tonsils and adenoids
K00.0 – K00.9	Disorders of tooth development and eruption
K01.0 – K01.1	Embedded and impacted teeth
K02.0 – K02.9	Dental caries
K03.0 – K03.9	Other diseases of hard tissues of teeth
K04.0 – K04.9	Diseases of pulp and periapical tissues
K05.0 – K05.6	Gingivitis and periodontal diseases
K06.0 – K06.9	Other disorders of gingiva and edentulous alveolar ridge
K07.0 – K07.9	Dentofacial anomalies (including malocclusion)
K08.0 – K08.9	Other disorders of teeth and supporting structures
K09.0 – K09.9	Cyst of oral region, not elsewhere classified
K10.0 – K10.9	Other diseases of jaws
K11.0 – K11.9	Diseases of the salivary glands
K14.0 – K14.9	Diseases of tongue
L01.0 – L01.1	Impetigo (for infants over 1 year of age)
L03.0	Cellulitis of finger and toe
L04.0 – L04.9	Acute lymphadenitis
L05.0 – L05.9	Pilonidal cyst
L08.0 – L08.8	Other local infections of skin and subcutaneous tissue
L20.0 – L20.9	Atopic dermatitis
L21.0 – L21.9	Seborrhoeic dermatitis
L22	Diaper (napkin) dermatitis
L23.0 – L23.9	Allergic contact dermatitis
L24.0 – L24.9	Irritant contact dermatitis

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

L25.0 – L25.9	Unspecified contact dermatitis
L28.0 – L28.2	Lichen simplex chronicus and prurigo
L29.0 – L29.9	Pruritus
L30.0 – L30.9	Other dermatitis
L41.0 – L41.9	Parapsoriasis
L42	Pityriasis rosea
L43.0 – L43.9	Lichen planus
L44.0 – L44.9	Other papulosquamous disorders
L55.0 – L55.1, L55.8 – L55.9	Sunburn, except sunburn of third degree (L55.2)
L56.0 – L56.9	Other acute skin changes due to ultraviolet radiation
L57.0 – L57.9	Skin changes due to chronic exposure to nonionizing radiation
L58.0 – L58.9	Radiodermatitis
L59.0 – L59.9	Other disorders of skin and subcutaneous tissue related to radiation
L60.0 – L60.9	Nail disorders
L63.0 – L63.9	Alopecia areata
L64.0 – L64.9	Androgenic alopecia
L65.0 – L65.9	Other nonscarring hair loss
L66.0 – L66.9	Cicatricial alopecia (scarring hair loss)
L67.0 – L67.9	Hair colour and hair shaft abnormalities
L68.0 – L68.9	Hypertrichosis
L70.0 – L70.9	Acne
L72.0 – L72.9	Follicular cysts of skin and subcutaneous tissue
L73.0 – L73.9	Other follicular disorders
L74.0 – L74.9	Ecocrine sweat disorders
L75.0 – L75.9	Apocrine sweat disorders
L80	Vitiligo
L81.0 – L81.9	Other disorders of pigmentation
L83	Acanthosis nigricans
L84	Corns and callosities
L85.0 – L85.9	Other epidermal thickening
L87.0 – L87.9	Transepidermal elimination disorders
L90.0 – L90.9	Atrophic disorders of skin
L91.0 – L91.9	Hypertrophic disorders of skin
L92.0 – L92.9	Granulomatous disorders of skin and subcutaneous tissue
L94.0 – L94.9	Other localized connective tissue disorders
L98.0 – L98.3, L98.5-L95.9	Other disorders of skin and subcutaneous tissue, not elsewhere classified
M20.0 – M20.6	Acquired deformities of fingers and toes
M21.0 – M21.9	Other acquired deformities of limbs
M22.0 – M22.9	Disorders of patella
M23.0 – M23.9	Internal derangement of knee
M24.0 – M24.9	Other specific joint derangements
M25.0 – M25.9	Other joint disorders, not elsewhere classified

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

M35.3	Polymyalgia rheumatica
M40.0 – M40.5	Kyphosis and lordosis
M43.6	Torticollis, unspecified
M43.8 – M43.9	Other and deforming dorsopathies
M48.0	Spinal stenosis in cervical region
M53.0 – M53.9	Other dorsopathies, not elsewhere classified
M54.0 – M54.9	Dorsalgia
M60.0 – M60.9	Myositis
M65.0 – M65.9	Synovitis and tenosynovitis
M66.0 – M66.5	Spontaneous rupture of synovium and tendon
M67.0 – M67.9	Other disorders of synovium and tendon
M70.0 – M70.9	Soft tissue disorders related to use, overuse and pressure
M71.0 – M71.9	Other bursopathies
M72.5	Fasciitis, not elsewhere classified, except necrotizing fasciitis
M75.0 – M75.9	Shoulder lesions
M76.0 – M76.9	Enthesopathies of lower limb, excluding foot
M77.0 – M77.9	Other enthesopathies
M79.0 – M79.9	Other soft tissue disorders, not elsewhere classified
M95.0 – M95.9	Other acquired deformities of musculoskeletal system and connective tissue
M99.0 – M99.9	Biomechanical lesions, not elsewhere classified
N39.3	Stress incontinence
N46	Male infertility
N47	Redundant prepuce, phimosis, and paraphimosis
N60.0 – N60.9	Benign mammary dysplasia
N84.0 – N84.9	Polyp of female genital tract
N85.0 – N85.9	Other noninflammatory disorders of uterus, except cervix
N86	Erosion and ectropion of cervix uteri
N87.0 – N87.9	Dysplasia of cervix uteri
N88.0 – N88.9	Other noninflammatory disorders of cervix uteri
N89.0 – N89.9	Other noninflammatory disorders of vagina
N90.0 – N90.9	Other noninflammatory disorders of vulva and perineum
N91.0 – N91.5	Absent, scanty, and rare menstruation
N92.0 – N92.9	Excessive, frequent, and irregular menstruation
N93.0 – N93.9	Other abnormal uterine and vaginal bleeding
N94.0 – N94.9	Pain and other conditions associated with female genital organs and menstrual cycle
N96	Habitual aborter
N97.0 – N97.9	Female infertility
Q10.0 – Q10.7	Congenital malformations of eyelid, lacrimal apparatus, and orbit
Q11.0 – Q11.3	Anophthalmos, microphthalmos and macrophthalmos
Q12.0 – Q12.9	Congenital lens malformations
Q13.0 – Q13.9	Congenital malformations of anterior segment of eye
Q14.0 – Q14.9	Congenital malformations of posterior segment of eye

Q15.0 – Q15.9	Other congenital malformations of eye
Q16.0 – Q16.9	Congenital malformations of ear causing impairment of hearing
Q17.0 – Q17.9	Other congenital malformations of ear
Q18.0 – Q18.9	Other congenital malformations of face and neck
Q38.1	Tongue tie
Q65.0 – Q65.9	Congenital deformities of hip
Q66.0 – Q66.9	Congenital deformities of feet
Q67.0 – Q67.8	Congenital musculoskeletal deformities of head, face, spine and chest
Q68.0 – Q68.8	Other congenital musculoskeletal deformities
Q69.0 – Q69.9	Polydactyly
Q70.0 – Q70.9	Syndactyly
Q71.0 – Q71.9	Reduction defects of upper limb
Q72.0 – Q72.9	Reduction defects of lower limb
Q73.0 – Q73.8	Reduction defects of unspecified limb
Q74.0 – Q74.9	Other congenital malformations of limb(s)
Q80.0 – Q80.3, Q80.8 – Q80.9	Congenital ichthyosis, except Harlequin fetus (Q80.4)
Q81.0	Epidermolysis bullosa simplex
Q81.2 – Q81.9	Other forms of epidermolysis bullosa, except epidermolysis bullosa letalis (Q81.1)
Q82.0 – Q82.9	Other congenital malformations of skin
Q83.0 – Q83.9	Congenital malformations of breast
Q84.0 – Q84.9	Other congenital malformations of integument
S00.0 – S00.9	Superficial injury of head
S05.0, S05.1, S05.8	Superficial injuries (any type) of eye and orbit (any part)
S10.0 – S10.9	Superficial injury of neck
S20.0 – S20.8	Superficial injury of thorax
S30.0 – S30.9	Superficial injury of abdomen, lower back and pelvis
S40.0 – S40.9	Superficial injury of shoulder and upper arm
S50.0 – S50.9	Superficial injury of forearm
S60.0 – S60.9	Superficial injury of wrist and hand
S70.0 – S70.9	Superficial injury of hip and thigh
S80.0 – S80.9	Superficial injury of lower leg
S90.0 – S90.9	Superficial injury of ankle and foot
T09.0	Superficial injury of trunk, level unspecified
T11.0	Superficial injury of upper limb, level unspecified
T13.0	Superficial injury of lower limb, level unspecified
T14.0	Superficial injury of unspecified body region
T20.1	Burn of first degree of head and neck
T21.1	Burn of first degree of trunk
T22.1	Burn of first degree of shoulder and upper limb, except wrist and hand
T23.1	Burn of first degree of wrist and hand
T24.1	Burn of first degree of hip and lower limb except ankle and foot
T25.1	Burn of first degree of ankle and foot

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

	<div>Appendix 7.1</div> <div>List of conditions unlikely to cause death</div> <div><div>Code</div><div>Category or subcategory</div><div>H54.0 – <u>H54.7</u> Blindness and low vision</div><div>H59.0 – H59.9 Postprocedural disorders of eye and adnexa, not elsewhere classified</div><div>M72.5 Fasciitis, not elsewhere classified, except necrotizing fasciitis</div><div>N92.0 – <u>N92.6</u> Excessive, frequent, and irregular menstruation</div></div>	MRG 0122	October 2002	Minor	January 2004
<div>Revise code</div> <div>Delete codes and text</div> <div>Delete code And text</div> <div>Revise code</div>					
<div>Revise text: ~p. 162</div>	<div>7. Appendices</div> <div>7.1 List of conditions unlikely to cause death (see 4.1.9, Rule B)</div> <div><div>Code</div><div>Category or subcategory</div><div>... </div><div>F69 Unspecified disorder of adult personality and behaviour</div><div><u>F80-F89</u> <u>Disorders of psychological development</u></div><div>F95.0–F95.9 Tic disorders</div></div>	MRG 1121	October 2007	Minor	January 2009
	<div>Appendix 7.2</div> <div>....</div> <div>7.2 List of conditions that can cause diabetes</div> <div>Acceptable sequences for diabetes “due to” other diseases</div> <div><div>Type of Diabetes</div><div>Due to</div><div>E10 <u>B25.2</u> E40-E46 <u>E63.9</u> E64.0</div></div>	MRG 1865	October 2011	Minor	January 2013

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

		<u>E64.9</u> M35.9 P35.0				
	E11	<u>E24</u> E40-E46 <u>E63.9</u> <u>E64.0</u> <u>E64.9</u> M35.9 <u>O24.4</u> <u>P35.0</u>				
	E12	E40-E46 <u>E63.9</u> <u>E64.0</u> <u>E64.9</u>				
	E13	B25.2 B26.3 C25 <u>C78.8 (pancreas only)</u> D13.6-D13.7 D35.0 E05-E06 E22.0 E24 E40-E46 E80.0-E80.2 E83.1 E84 E89.1 F10.1-F10.2 G10 G11.1 G25.8 G71.1 K85 K86.0-K86.1 K86.8-K86.9 M35.9 O24.4				

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

	E14	P35.0 Q87.1 Q90 Q96 Q98 Q99.8 S36.2 T37.3 T37.5 T38.0-T38.1 T42.0 T46.5 T46.7 T50.2 X41 X44 X61 X64 Y11 Y14 Y41.3 Y41.5 Y42.0-Y42.1 Y46.2 Y52.5 Y52.7 Y54.3 B25.2 B26.3 C25 <u>C78.8 (pancreas only)</u> D13.6-D13.7 D35.0 E05-E06 E22.0 E24 E40-E46 <u>E63.9</u> <u>E64.0</u> <u>E64.9</u> E80.0-E80.2				
--	-----	---	--	--	--	--

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

		E83.1 E84 E89.1 F10.1-F10.2 G10 G11.1 G25.8 G71.1 K85 K86.0-K86.1 K86.8-K86.9 M35.9 O24.4 P35.0 Q87.1 Q90 Q96 Q98 Q99.8 S36.2 T37.3 T37.5 T38.0-T38.1 T42.0 T46.5 T46.7 T50.2 X41 X44 X61 X64 Y11 Y14 Y41.3 Y41.5 Y42.0-Y42.1 Y46.2 Y52.5 Y52.7 Y54.3				
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

--	--	--	--	--	--

Includes proposals ratified by the WHO-FIC Network at the annual meeting in Brasilia, October 2012

Index

Instruction	Instruction manual entries	Source	Date approved	Major/ Minor update	Implementation date
p. 171-177 Add and revise terms in the index:	Index <u>Accepted sequences for coding 71</u> “Highly improbable” relationships 71 <u>Rejected sequences for coding 71</u>	MRG 1130	October 2007	Minor	January 2010
p. 172 Add and revise terms:	Index <u>Death occurring during pregnancy, childbirth and puerperium 141</u> p. 176 Pregnancy related death 141 Pregnancy related mortality ratio 143 <u>Ratio for death occurring during pregnancy, childbirth and puerperium 143</u>	MRG 1242	October 2007	Minor	January 2009